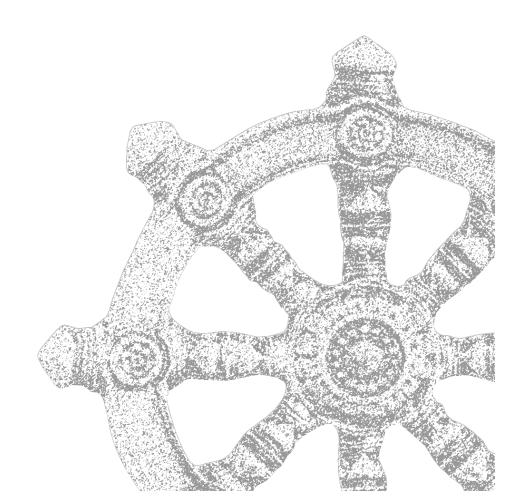


THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 2

COURSE

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 6-10



Thank you for your interest in the Asian Classics Institute's Correspondence Courses. A complete Formal Study Course consists of audio recordings from the original class series in New York, along with the supporting text materials from each class. The text and audio may be downloaded (see www.world-view.org in the on-line teachings section), or ordered by mail (see the Courses by mail section of the web site).

This Course consists of eleven classes, each of which has approximately one hour of audio, along with corresponding written materials. The audio can be ordered by mail, listened to on-line as streaming Real Audio, or downloaded onto your computer in mp3 or RA format for playback later. The written materials for this Course are contained in eight on-line files which can be downloaded, printed and assembled into a three-ring binder.

A complete Course binder contains the following sections in this order: a binder cover and spine, an overview of the teacher training program, prayers, a course syllabus, readings, homework, quizzes, a final examination, answer keys and Tibetan study materials. For ease of binder assembly, be sure to print the files on three hole paper.

Please note that Geshe Michael taught the first half of each class in this Course. The second half of each class was conducted in smaller study groups, and was led by a student teacher. The second half of each class was not recorded.

Each class lecture has a corresponding reading, homework, quiz, and meditation. After listening to the audio from a class, the reading, homework, quiz and meditation should be completed for that class before continuing on to the next class. The homework can be completed open book style. The quizzes should be completed from memory only, without the aid of notes or other materials. (A good approach is to look at an answer key *after* you have finished that homework, and to use that answer key to study for that quiz.) A final exam is given at the end of the Course.

You may grade your own papers using the supplied answer keys if you wish to do so. All of the quiz questions come from the homework, and the homework answer keys are also used to grade the quizzes and the final exam.

This review Course 17 is **not** available to be graded by the Institute as a correspondence course. *Please do not mail in any of the homework or quizes for grading.* To receive credit and a certificate of completion for a review Course, it must be taken in person with a teacher approved by the Institue.

We would like to emphasize that, although recordings and written materials can be extremely helpful, it is essential for serious Buddhist practitioners to meet and study directly with a qualified Teacher who can give the necessary guidance and personal instructions of the lineage.

In these teachings the wisdom of Enlightened Beings has been passed down in an unbroken lineage to you. May you take these teachings and put them into practice in your life to benefit all. May every goodness grow and spread in all directions right now!

Overview of the Formal Study Course Teacher Training Program

The Six Great Books of Buddhism outlined below are the subject of a geshe's eighteen year program of monastic study. The Asian Classics Institute condenses these Six Great Books of Buddhism into a series of 15 Formal Study Courses.

Book One

Geshe Study Subject: The Perfection of Wisdom (Prajnya Paramita)

School of Buddhism Studied: Beginning Middle-Way (Madhyamika Svatrantika);

also includes some material from Mind-Only (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Text: The Jewel of Realization (Abhisamaya Alamkara)

Written by: Maitreya (the Future Buddha) as related to Master Asanga, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Six years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, Overview of the Art of Interpretation, Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, Overview of Dependent Origination, Overview of the Form and Formless

Written by: Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (fl. 1850) Typical Subjects: The three kinds of refuge; The wish for enlightenment; What is nirvana?; The proofs for emptiness; Who is Maitreya?; The twelve links of dependent origination in the Wheel of Life; Deep levels of meditation; How do we know when the Buddha was speaking figuratively?; A flow-chart for liberation.

Book Two

Geshe Study Subject: The Middle Way (Madhyamika)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika); also includes some material from the Mind-Only School (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Texts: Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamaka Avatara) and A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattva Charya Avatara)

Written by: The first by Master Chandrakirti, circa 650 AD in explanation of Master Nagarjuna, about 200 AD; and the second by Master Shantideva, circa 700 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Four years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra

Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva

Courses X, XI, XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Overview of the Middle Way; A Commentary on the Diamond-Cutter Sutra; The String of Shining Jewels, on the Three Sets of Vows; The Point of Entry for Bodhisattvas, a Commentary to the "Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life"

Written by: Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1830)

Typical Subjects: Emptiness and the Wish for enlightenment; Emptiness and the bodies of a Buddha; The future of the Buddha's teaching; Emptiness and karma; The direct perception of emptiness; Emptiness and paradise; How empty things still work; The root and secondary vows of a bodhisattva; How to keep the vows; How to purify bad deeds; Taking joy; How to fight mental afflictions; The perfection of giving; How anger destroys good karma; The nature of anger; Where bad things really come from; Dealing with jealousy; Quietude; Stopping attachment; On the joys of solitude; Devoting oneself to meditation; On the need to see emptiness; The two realities; The emptiness of feelings; The sliver of Diamond.

Book Three

Geshe Study Subject: Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha)

Written by: Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course V: How Karma Works

Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: *Light on the Path to Freedom, a Commentary to the Treasure House*

Written by: Gyalwa Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474)

Typical Subjects: The nature of karma; The role of motivation; The correlation of deeds and their results; How karma is carried; The relative severity of deeds; The three realms of existence; The nature of the *bardo* (intermediate state between birth and death); A description of time and space; The destruction of the world; How to do death meditation

Book Four

Geshe Study Subject: Vowed Morality (Vinaya) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: A Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra)

Written by: Master Gunaprabha, circa 500 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Course:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Course: *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline; Daymaker--A commentary on the "Essence of the Ocean"*

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) Typical Subjects: The nature of the vows of freedom; Their divisions; The specific vows (note: nuns and monks' vows are presented only to those with ordination); Who can take vows; How vows are lost; The benefits of keeping vows.

Book Five

Geshe Study Subject: Buddhist Logic (Pramana) School of Buddhism Studied: Sutrist (Sautrantika)

Main Root Text: The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika)

Written by: Master Dharmakirti, circa 650 AD, on Master Dignaga, circa 450 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Three months per year for 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: The Four Reasonings; Light on the Path to Freedom, An Explanation of the Commentary on Valid Perception; Jewel of the True Thought; An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning; An Explanation of the Path of Reasoning; The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son; The Collected Topics of Rato; A Clear Exposition upon Mind and Mental Functions

Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); The First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen (1567?-1662); Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997); Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901); Master Ngawang Trashi (c. 1700); Master Chok-hla U-ser (c. 1500)

Typical Subjects: The meaning of valid perception; The nature of omniscience; Proofs for past and future lives; The qualities of a Buddha; Why study the art of reasoning?; The definition of a reason; How to do Buddhist debate; The parts of a logical statement; Cause and effect; The nature of the subject mind; The concept of negatives and positives; The nature of definitions; The concept of time.

Book Six

Geshe Study Subject: The Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika)

Main Root Text: The Great Book on the Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim Chenmo)

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419)

Traditional period to cover this subject: Intermittently over a period of 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** A Gift of Liberation, Thrust into Our Hands; The Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Commentary on the Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama); Preparing for Tantra (The "Source of All My Good" and its Commentary); A Collection of Lojong Texts; Offering of the Mandala; How to Offer the Mandala in Thirty-Seven Parts
- **Written by:** Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941); Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The Meaning of Rennciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and correct world view; How to do a daily practice; How to meditate; What to meditate on; How to practice at work and other everyday situations; How to offer the mandala; How to practice love and compassion; Brief presentations of the entire path to Enlightenment; How to prepare for the secret teachings.

ञ्जा |सङ्ग्रा | mandel

เลาสุดิร์สังเฏิงเกูสุจเจ็รเลิร์สุเสมุม sashi pukyi jukshing metok tram,

୲ଽୖ୵ୣ୷ୢୠ୵୕୵ୠୖୄୠୢଌ୶୵ୣ୷୶୵୳୕ୡୄ୵୲

rirab lingshi nyinde gyenpa di,

sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

|त्र्ज्ञेंगुर्द्रस्य द्वालिट त्यः र्स्ट्रेट प्यरः र्व्जा ||
drokun namdak shingla chupar shok.

ाक्षे दे त्यु दु र इ अड़ य मै के हु ह प्य की ।

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

ञ्चा । भुनवायम् अध्ययः नभुत्। । kyabdro semkye

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

|ธุร:สูธ:จราวราราชาสิ:สูธจะสู:มะติจา jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

| กรุกาทิสาลิสาลักลากฏิสานนิ กลัร สุมสาฏิสา dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

प्रज्ञां ता प्रवास्त्र स्थित अद्यास्त्र स्था विष्या प्रवास्त्र स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था वि

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



| इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान हिन्तु । इस्मान

ารณ์รุ:สุมพาพิ:ผิพ:ชั้มพาษักพาผิรา sunam yeshe tsok-dzok shing,

รunam yeshe lejung way,

| द्रमः सः भुः महिषा वर्षेतः धरः विम । । । dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.



| क्रेंब:य:ब्रु: ब्रेंड: ब्राट्य:क्रुब: देव: क्रेंड

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

ब्रिंच यः त्वः येऽ : ५ यः कें यः रे दः यें के ।

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,

विदेशमास्यासेनान्यो वित्तर्भने संस्कृ

drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,

भिन्न नामक्र निर्माद सके वा नासुक्र ता सके निर्माद नुषा

kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this
To the guides
Higher than any other,
The precious Sangha.

I offer this To the places of refuge, To the Three Jewels, Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Course Syllabus

Reading One

Subject: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level One of the tradition of

the Middle Way, or Madhyamika.

Reading: Selections from the original Diamond-Cutter Sutra, along with

excerpts from the only known native Tibetan commentary to this work: *Sunlight on the Path to Freedom,* written by Chone Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748), from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

Reading Two

Subject: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the Diamond-Cutter Sutra and its

commentary, *Sunlight on the Path to Freedom*. In addition, brief selections from *A Commentary on the Three Principal Paths*, by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941). Finally, a chapter on the direct perception of emptiness from *The Garden*, by Geshe Michael.

Reading Three

Subject: The Vows of a Bodhisattva, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Two of the tradition of

the Middle Way, or *Madhyamika*.

Reading: Selections from A Highway for Bodhisattvas, by Je Tsongkapa

(1357-1419), and *A String of Shining Jewels*, by Geshe Tsewang Samdrup—personal instructor of His Holiness the Tenth Dalai

Lama, Tsultrim Gyatso (1816-1837).

Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two Course Syllabus

Reading Four

Subject: The Vows of a Bodhisattva, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the latter two works mentioned above.

Reading Five

Subject: Death and the Realms of Existence, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Two of the tradition of

Higher Knowledge, or Abhidharma.

Reading: Selections from the following works: The Treasure House of Higher

Knowledge of Master Vasubandhu (c. 350 AD), with commentary from An Illumination of the Path to Freedom by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474); The Great Book on the Steps of the Teaching by Geshe Drolungpa (c. 1100 AD); and The Path of Ease, by His Holiness the First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen (1567?-1662), with a selection from the A Chest of Riches, a commentary on this work by Master Ngulchu

Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851).

Reading Six

Subject: Death and the Realms of Existence, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the first two works mentioned above, as

well as from The Great Book on the Steps of the Path, by Tsongkapa

the Great (1357-1419).

Reading Seven

Subject: Buddhist Discipline, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level One of the tradition of

Buddhist Discipline, or Vinaya.

Reading: Selections from the following works: An Epistle to Ngawang

Drakpa on the Occasion of the Ordination of the First Monks of Gyalrong, by Tsongkapa the Great (1357-1419); a topical outline of The Wishing Jewel, a commentary to the Sutra on Discipline by Chone Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); and Essence of the Ocean, a summary of the vows of individual freedom by Je Tsongkapa, with a commentary by Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)

entitled *Daymaker*.

Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two Course Syllabus

Reading Eight

Subject: Buddhist Discipline, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the last two works mentioned above.

Reading Nine

Subject: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part One

This and the next reading represent Level Three of the tradition

of the Middle Way, or Madhyamika.

Reading: Selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life by Master

Shantideva (circa 700 AD), with excerpts from a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for*

Children of the Victorious Buddhas

Reading Ten

Subject: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

and Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading One: The Diamond Cutter Sutra, Part One

The following selections are taken from Sunlight on the Path to Freedom, written by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748) of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. The original root text of the sutra by Lord Buddha is included in darker type.

1 The Disciple's Question

शुः त्रयः क्रें द्वारा न्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्र्यं त्र्य त्य त्रात्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रित्त व्यास्य क्रें व्याय क्रें व्याय त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य त्र व्याय क्रें व्याय क्रें व्याय त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रित्ते त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य त्रात्य

And then the junior monk Subhuti rose from his cushion, and dropped the corner of his higher robe from one shoulder in a gesture of respect, and knelt with his right knee to the ground. He faced the Conqueror, joined his palms at his heart, and bowed. Then he beseeched the Conqueror in the following words:

पञ्ची दे:स्रेट.कुर्य.योश्यात्त.ट्ट.। स्रेट.योत्रेश.तर.पञ्ची हु.स्रेट.पर्सेय.तर.पञ्ची हु.सेट.शुश्रश.रच.पे.योवेट.यर. वित्रुश.र्जेय.यट्या चिट.क्य.शुश्रश.रचयु.त्रया.ता.ला.लट.रचा.तर.बियोश.तश.हु.

O Conqueror, what of those who have entered well into the way of the bodhisattva? How shall they live? How shall they practice? How should they keep their thoughts?

2 The Disciple is Revealed

पत्र-र्शे नुषुःष्ठिरःश्र्वःयःययाष्यायः प्रतः विष्यः यात्राव्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषय

And since it is so, o Subhuti, listen now to what I speak, and be sure that it stays firmly in your heart, for I shall reveal to you how it is that those who have entered well into the way of the bodhisattva should live, and how they should practice, and how they should keep their thoughts.

श्रुवार्त्र। पर्वमास्त्र वर्षणा दे प्रबेश पर्दा पर्वमास्त्र वर्षणास्त्र वर्षणास्त्

"Thus shall it be," replied the junior monk Subhuti, and he sat to listen as instructed by the Conqueror. The Conqueror too then began, with the following words...

त्रम्याविक्षेत्रं त्रम्याविक्षेत्रं त्रम्याविक्षेत्रं त्रम्याविक्ष्याये क्ष्यायाव्ये क्ष्यायाव्ये क्ष्याये क्ष्ये क्ष्याये क्ष्ये क्ष्याये क्ष्याये क्ष्याये क्ष्याये क्ष्याये क्ष्ये क्ष्ये क्ष्याये क्ष्ये क्षये क्ष्ये क्ष

In reply then Subhuti proffers to the Conqueror, "Thus shall it be." He sits to listen as instructed by the Conqueror, and the Conqueror too begins his explanation with the words that follow.

This Subhuti, by the way, is only posing as a disciple: in reality he would appear to be an emanation of Manjushri himself. When the Teacher spoke the sutras on the Mother of the Buddhas, it was none other than Subhuti that he would appoint to give the opening presentations—and there is a special significance to why he did so.

The Buddha's Reply: the Wish for Enlightenment

I will bring to nirvana the total amount of living beings, every single one numbered among the ranks of living kind. . .

enlightenment:

However many living beings there are, in whatever realms there may be—anyone at all labelled with the name of "living being"—all these will I bring to total nirvana, to the sphere beyond all grief, where none of the parts of the person are left at all.

Yet even if I do manage to bring this limitless number of living beings to total nirvana, there will be no living being at all who was brought to total nirvana.

Lord Buddha wants us to understand that this Wish for enlightenment must be imbued with that correct view wherein you perceive that nothing has a self-nature. This is why He states that we must develop a Wish for enlightenment where we intend to lead **this limitless number** of living beings to the nirvana beyond both extremes, but where at the same time we realize that, **even if we do manage to bring them to this total nirvana, there will be no living being at all** who achieved it, and who also existed in an ultimate sense.

4 On the Meaning of "Nirvana"

नियान्त्राह्म निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्य निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्य निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्य निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निर्माण्यात्त्र निरमाण्यात्त्र निरम्पाण्यात्त्र निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्त्र निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्त्य निरम्पाण्यात्य निरम्पाण्यात्य निर

The Tibetan term for "nirvana" means "passing beyond sorrow." The "sorrow" mentioned here refers to the pair of karma and mental afflictions, as well as to suffering. The nirvana to which you wish to bring beings then refers to a state of escaping from the combination of karma and bad thoughts, along with suffering: it means to go beyond them. This is why the unusual Tibetan verb here refers not only to nirvana, but to the act of *bringing* someone to nirvana as well. The root text at this point is meant to indicate that ordinary beings can possess something that approximates the ultimate Wish for enlightenment. It is also indicating the existence of the actual ultimate Wish for enlightenment, which only realized beings possess.

5 The Object which Emptiness Denies

यान्वायाः वुःर्ध्यः वेद्यायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः वुः स्वायाः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्य निर्देश्य विद्याः विद्याः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः विद्याः विद्या

Now each and every existing object, be it part of the afflicted part of existence or part of the pure side, is established as existing only by virtue of terms. If one performs an analysis with reasoning which examines an object in an ultimate sense, no object can bear such examination, and we fail to locate what we gave our label. Here the thing we deny is easier to deny if we can identify it clearly. As such I will speak a bit about what this thing we deny is like.

तयुः रेचरः ग्रीश्राचलियो तरः यशिरश्रातः श्रारः रू. लिश्राचिशेरश्रातः स्ट्रीर।

योश्राचलियो तरः यशिरशासे। क्र्रशावश्रावश्रात्य व्याप्तः यश्राचिश्राचान्त्रः यश्राचिश्राचान्त्रः यश्राचिश्राचान्त्रः यश्राचिश्राच्यः यश्राच्यः यश्यः यश्राच्यः यश्राचः यश्राच्यः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्यः यश्राचः यश्यः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्राचः यश्यः यश्यः यश्यः यश्राचः यश्यः यश्य

Generally speaking there are a great number of different positions that exist about what the object we deny exactly is. Here though I will give my explanation according to the position of the Consequence section of the Middle Way school.

A certain sutra says that "They are all established through concepts." The *Commentary to the Four Hundred* too contains lines such as the one which says, "It is only due to the existence of concepts that existence itself can exist, and..."

The Lord, in his *Illumination of the True Thought*, says as well that "These lines [from sutra] are describing how all existing things are established by force of concepts [or perceptions forced on us by our previous deeds]. We see many other such statements as well, to the point that all existing objects are simply labelled with our concepts, and are established only by force of concepts."

क्र्यात्त्रश्चर्यक्षः व्यत्त्रश्चर्यात्त्र्यः विष्णः विष्

There is a metaphor used to describe how all existing things are labelled with our concepts. When you put a rope with a checkered pattern on it in a dark corner, some people might get the impression that it's a snake. The truth at this point though is that nothing about the rope is a snake: neither the rope as a whole, nor the parts of the rope. Nonetheless the person thinks of the rope as a snake, and this snake is an example of something which only makes its appearance as something labelled with a concept.

यहेब.बब.यहेबाब.सं.यहेब.बब.एयं.बाह्म प्रमाण्य प्रमाण प

In the same way, the heaps of parts that make us up serve as a basis for us to get the impression "This is me." There is nothing at all about these heaps as a whole, nor their continuation over time, nor their separate components, that we could establish as being an actual representation of "me."

At the same time though there is nothing else, nothing essentially separate from these heaps of parts to ourselves, that we could consider an actual representation of "me" either. As such, this "me" is merely something labelled upon the heaps of parts that make us up; there is nothing which exists by its own essence.

 वित्तिम् स्ट्रियः स्

वियागसुरयार्थे।

Given the above, there does not exist anything which does not occur in dependence, or which is not labelled through a dependent relationship. Therefore the point at which we can say something is the object denied by our search for a hypothetical self-existent thing would be any time that thing existed without having been labelled through a dependent relationship. This too is why the *Root Text on Wisdom* states:

No object which does not occur Through dependence even exists at all; As such no object could exist At all if it weren't empty.

6 Emptiness and the Wish for Enlightenment

नि उत्ते भी रव वर्ते राज्य नि व्याप के स्वाप के

Why is it so? Because, Subhuti, if a bodhisattva were to conceive of someone as a living being, then we could never call him a "bodhisattva."

वर्षायायाः के मिट्न क्रियः क्षेत्रकार मियः यादः क्षेत्रकार क्षेत्रकार क्षेत्रकार क्षेत्रकार क्षेत्रकार क्षेत्र सरः क्षेत्रकार मुक्ते द्वार्यकार स्वीतः स्वतः क्षेत्रकार क्

Here we return to where we left off in the root text. One may ask, "Why is it so? What reason is there for saying that we should develop a Wish for enlightenment, while still understanding that there is no truly existing sentient being at all who ever achieves it?" Lord Buddha first calls Subhuti by name, and then explains that we could never call any particular bodhisattva a "bodhisattva who had realized the meaning of no-self-nature" if this bodhisattva were to conceive of any living being as a living being who existed truly.

Perfect Giving, with an Understanding of Emptiness

पदे.ह्ये.ह्ये.ह्ये. प्रमान प्रमान हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र कर्या हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र कर्या हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र कर्या हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र क्षित्र क्षित्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र है। या वर्षेत्र हिंदा है। या वर्षेत्र है। या वर्षेत्र

Why is that? Think, o Subhuti, of the mountains of merit collected by any bodhisattva who performs the act of giving without staying. This merit, o Subhuti, is not something that you could easily ever measure.

चतः स्रवतः स्ट्रिंग्वीशः चठ्ठटशः प्रतः श्रुवः स्यानः श्रुवः प्रतः स्रानः स्रानः स्रानः स्रानः स्रानः स्रानः स्यानः स्रानः स्यानः स्रानः स्रान

One would have to admit that a person locked in the chains of grasping to some true existence can collect a great amount of merit through acts of giving and the like. But suppose a person is able to practice giving and the rest after

he has freed himself from these same chains. His merit then is certain to be ever much greater. And it is to emphasize this point that the Buddha says, Why is that? Think, o Subhuti, of the mountains of merit collected by any bodhisattva who performs the act of giving without staying. This merit is not something whose limit you could easily ever measure; in fact, it would be quite difficult to measure.

O Subhuti, what do you think? Would it be easy to measure the space to the east of us?

And Subhuti replied,

O Conqueror, it would not.

The Conqueror bespoke:

And just so, would it be easy to measure the space to the south of us, or to the north of us, or above us, or below us, or in any of the ordinal directions from us? Would it be easy to measure the space to any of the ten directions from where we now stand?

And Subhuti replied,

O Conqueror, it would not.

The Conqueror bespoke:

And just so, o Subhuti, it would be no easy thing to measure the mountains of merit collected by any bodhisattva who performs the act of giving without staying.

पर्नेश्राम् । चरायम् रात्त्रीयात्राम्हेषात्राम्हेषात्राम्हेष्यात्राप्यात्राम्हेष्यात्राप्यात्रात्राप्यात्रात्राप्यात्रात्राप्यात्

The root text here is presenting an example. It would be no easy thing to measure the space to the east or any of the rest of the ten directions reaching out from the particular point where we are now. Then the Buddha summarizes the point of the example with the words that start with "Just so, Subhuti..."

8 The Emptiness of the Bodies of a Buddha

O Subhuti, what do you think? Should we consider someone to be the One Thus Gone because he possesses the totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body?

And Subhuti replied,

O Conqueror, we should not. We should not consider someone the One Thus Gone because he possesses the totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body. And why not? Because when the One Thus Gone himself described the totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body, he stated at the same time that they were impossible.

And then the Conqueror spoke to the junior monk Subhuti again, as follows:

<u>রি</u>র-র্যামানর্থ-বেসমান্ট্রিমামানেমান্মনান্ট্রামান্ট্রামান্ত্র্যা वर्गुर लिटा म्ब्याय गुः श्रुरिय अर्व दियेय प्रमानिय पर्वे । यस वर्गेर वरे हि श्रुयः ५ श्रीयश्विशयात्री रवावर्त्तेर विंद्रशीशर्देद वदे वाहे सूर धीद क्रुयाद् श्रीयश्राय म्रे'प्रथम। ने'प्रविद्यानियायायदे'या बुयायाग्री मुन्द्रमायायिया दे'स्य स्वाप्तिया सुमार्केम्बरपान्दरास्वरपाधीवरमेत्। वेवरगुदामम्बर्धरप्तस्वरस्वराद्वरस्वराकेम्बरपाधीदा य'दे'र्र्यअ'ग्रीअ'दे'प्रविद:पाविषायायर'वृ'प'र्यू'प'र्द्यू'पर'ग्रु'प'र्प्य, ग्रु'प'र्थेद'श्रूय'यदय'विया বার্ষবেদী। ত্র্ব: এব: ব্রী:বারী:মার্চর:ব্রী:ধ্র-ধ্রাইবারা:বার্থবি:বারী:ধ্র-ব্র चलेब मिवेगारा सर चार पर हो नहीं ने है है है से न ने ने है ने विकास की मिर्म के मिर्म है मिरम है मिर्म त्रश्याचियोत्राग्रीःभ्रेषुःश्रक्ष्यःरेतुःस्य श्रीत्रःक्ष्योत्रात्तःयोदःयोश्चरत्रातःरेःक्षेरःग्रीयःह्यः र्रु: श्रु-अ''सूर-प्येर्-धर-वाशुर्याणी देव-द्याधर-अर्वद-द्ये: सुव-शुय-र्वेवायाध्यः मक्रमायदे सुर र्वे लेग मर्गेव हैं।

The merit of acts such as giving and the rest bring us the physical body of a Buddha, and this physical body is adorned with various marks and signs. The words "Subhuti, what do you think?" mean "Subhuti, turn your mind to this subject, and think about how it could be—contemplate upon it."

The Buddha then asks Subhuti, "Assume for a minute that **someone possessed the totally exquisite marks** and signs, or the two physical bodies, of the One Thus Gone. Would that in itself **require us to consider him**—that is, assert that he is—**the One Thus Gone?** What do you think?"

Subhuti replies to the Buddha with the words starting off from, "We should not consider him so." At this point we have to draw a slight distinction. One should not necessarily consider someone the One Thus Gone simply because he possesses the totally exquisite marks and signs. "And why not?" says Subhuti. He answers himself by saying, "Because when the One Thus Gone himself described the totally exquisite marks and signs on a Buddha's body, he stated at the same time that they existed deceptively, in the way of an illusion. Signs and marks of this kind that existed ultimately, however, would be a complete impossibility."

पर्वयायात्रीं त्र त्री है क्षू अर् क्ष्य क्ष्य

O Subhuti, what do you think? The totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body, as such, are deceptive. The totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body are also not deceptive, but only insofar as they do not exist. Thus you should see the One Thus Gone as having no marks, no marks at all.

Thus did the Conqueror speak. And then the junior monk Subhuti replied to the Conqueror, as follows:

हार्यारी अष्ट्री स्वरासीयात्र

श्री मर्द्रवाका ग्री अववर श्रुण मर्द्रवाद्वी प्रदेश मार्च्या विद्रास्त्र मार्च्या मार्च्या विद्रास्त्र मार्च्या विद्रास्त्र मार्च्या विद्रास्त्र मार्च्या मार्या मार्च्या मार्या मार्च्या मार्या मार्या मार्व्य मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या मार्या म

The marks and signs on the physical body of the Buddha are like an image drawn on a piece of paper: they are not the real thing—they exist in a deceptive manner, as things that occur when all of their causes have gathered together. They do not exist as something with a true nature. To indicate this fact, Lord Buddha says to Subhuti, "Insofar as the totally exquisite marks on a Buddha's body exist, as such they are deceptive.

"Just what," you may ask, "is meant by the word deceptive?" The totally exquisite marks and signs on a Buddha's body are also not deceptive, and true, but only insofar as they do not exist truly. Thus you should see the One Thus Gone as having no marks, no marks to indicate his nature, at all.

The section here helps to prevent us from falling into either one of the two extremes. The physical body of the Buddha and its various marks and signs do exist—albeit in a deceptive way, in a false or empty way—and this fact keeps us from the extreme of denying the existence of something which actually does exist.

The text though also states that there exist no marks, and no marks that would indicate any nature, which also exist truly. This fact keeps us from the extreme of asserting the existence of something which actually does not exist. The former of these two [marks] is referring to the physical body of a Buddha. The latter is referring to the dharma body, and chiefly to the essence body.

9 On the Future of the Buddha's Teachings

O Conqueror, what will happen in the future, in the days of the last five hundred, when the holy Dharma is approaching its final destruction? How could anyone of those times ever see accurately the meaning of the explanations given in sutras such as this one?

And the Conqueror bespoke,

O Subhuti, you should never ask the question you have just asked: "What will happen in the future, in the days of the last five hundred, when the Dharma is approaching its final destruction? How could anyone of those times ever see accurately the meaning of the explanations given in sutras such as this one?"

र्मतः कुषः स्रार्मा वर्षे द्रार्मा वर्षे स्राप्तः मुक्तः स्राप्तः स्रापतः स्राप्तः स्राप्तः स्राप्तः स्रापतः स्रापतः

And again the Buddha bespoke,

O Subhuti, in the future, in the days of the last five hundred, when the holy Dharma is approaching its final destruction, there will come bodhisattvas who are great beings, who possess morality, who possess the fine quality, and who possess wisdom.

And these bodhisattvas who are great beings, o Subhuti, will not be ones who have rendered honor to a single Buddha, or who have collected stores of virtue with a single Buddha. Instead, o Subhuti, they will be ones who have rendered honor to many hundreds of thousands of Buddhas, and who have collected stores of virtue with many hundreds of thousands of Buddhas. Such are the bodhisattvas, the great beings, who then will come.

र्जित्मभी स्वार्जि थु. जु. कुंबर कुंटर किंत्मभी यु. तम्म दें तम्भेष्य ता योष्ट्र अल्लेश तत्। यर्थ त्रिया किंत्र ता किंत्र में स्वार्जिय त्रिया किंत्र तम् र दें योष्ट्र श्लेष यो योष्ट्र त्राय्त्र क्षेत्र त्रिया किंत्र त्राय्त्र क्षेत्र त्राय्त्र क्षेत्र त्राय्त्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र त्राय्त्र क्षेत्र क्षे

Master Kamalashila explains the expression "days of the last five hundred" as follows:

"Five hundred" here refers to a group of five hundreds; it refers to the well-known saying that "The teachings of the Conqueror will remain for five times five hundred."

As such, the "five times five hundred" refers to the length of time that the teachings will remain in the world: 2,500 years.

On the Good Karma of Studying and Living Emptiness

चित्रं अप्याणि स्वायणि स्वायण

The Conqueror bespoke:

O Subhuti, what do you think? Suppose some son or daughter of noble family were to take all the planets of this great world system, a system with a thousand of a thousand of a thousand planets, and fill them all up with the seven kinds of precious substances, and offer them to someone. Would that son or daughter of noble family create many great mountains of merit from such a deed?

With this next section of the sutra, Lord Buddha wishes to demonstrate a certain fact. In the sections above we have spoken about the act of becoming enlightened, and of teaching the dharma, and so on. Neither these, nor any other object in the universe, exists ultimately. Nonetheless, they do exist nominally. As such, one would have to admit that anyone who performs an act of giving does acquire great merit thereby. Yet anyone who carries out the process of learning, or contemplating, or meditating upon this teaching acquires infinitely greater merit.

रवः वर्ते र ग्रीका वर्षे व्याप्त वर्षे का स्वाप्त का स

O Conqueror, many would it be. O Conqueror, it would be many. This son or daughter of noble family would indeed create many great mountains of merit from such a deed. And why so? Because, o Conqueror, these same great mountains of merit are great mountains of merit that could never exist. And for this very reason do the Ones Thus Gone speak of "great mountains of merit,"

र्यायः प्रयुः प्राप्तस्य प्रयुः विद्यान्तः विद्यानः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्य

In response, Subhuti replies:

It would be many great mountains of merit—and these great mountains of merit are mountains of merit that we could establish as existing only in name, only in the way that a dream or an illusion exists: these same great mountains of merit though could never exist as mountains that existed ultimately. The Ones Thus Gone as well speak in a nominal sense of "great mountains of merit, great mountains of merit"—applying the name to them.

ग्री.सेंट.स्.कुश्र.शट.टी.चीटश्र.शुट.ट्रत्या.में.शुट.तायश्चेट.त्र्या.सेंश्च्

And the Conqueror bespoke:

O Subhuti, suppose some son or daughter of noble family were to take all the planets of this great world system, a system with a thousand of a thousand of a thousand planets, and fill them all up with the seven kinds of precious substances, and offer them to someone. Suppose on the other hand that one of them held but a single verse of four lines from this particular dharma, and explained it to others, and taught it correctly. By doing the latter, this person would create many more great mountains of merit than with the former: they would be countless, and beyond all estimation.

यम्बार्श्वरम् स्त्री स्त्रात्म स्त्

ग्विरावाद्गे क्षेत्राव्याद्गे स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्तात् स्व विद्यात् क्षेत्राचाद्वी । दिः क्षेत्राचाद्वी स्वाप्तात् स्वाप्त

We should first say something about the word "verse" here. Although the sutra in Tibetan is not written in verse, the idea is that one could put it into verse in Sanskrit. The word "hold" refers to "holding in the mind," or memorizing. It can also apply to holding a volume in one's hand and, in either case, reciting the text out loud.

The phrase "explain it correctly" is explained as stating the words of the sutra and explaining them well. The phrase "teach it correctly" is explained as teaching the meaning of the sutra well, and this is the most important part.

Suppose now that one held the sutra and did the other things mentioned with it, rather than the other good deed described. This person would then create great mountains of merit that were ever more countless, and beyond all estimation.

द्वीर-र्रा द्वीर-र्रा इंग्रस-प्रमान्त्र-ब्रा-क्रिय-क्

Why is it so? Because, Subhuti, this is where the matchless and totally perfect enlightenment of the Ones Thus Gone, the Destroyers of the Foe, the Totally Enlightened Buddhas, comes from. It is from this as well that the Buddhas, the Conquerors, are born.

The reason for this is as follows. The act of giving someone the dharma is of much more benefit that the act of giving material things. Not only that, but **the enlightenment of the totally enlightened Buddhas comes from**—is achieved through—the perfection of wisdom: the realization of emptiness which forms the subject matter of this text. **It is from** putting **this** into practice as well that **the Buddhas**, **the Conquerors**, **are born**.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Two: The Diamond Cutter Sutra, Part Two

We begin with a selection from The Garden which describes something of the experience of the direct realization of emptiness.

11 The Direct Perception of Emptiness

And so I, the quiet bookworm, began leading the life of a Warrior, secretly. It was a truly new experience, a new way of experiencing the world in which I had always lived, for the battlefield of this particular Warrior was the same old library, and my little room at the hermitage, and the alley down which I travelled to go to market for my vegetables in the evening. I really did feel like a different person, for I had a totally different purpose than I had had in the past. Going through life before had seemed like walking down a boulevard lined with shops; I was a shopper, a consumer, looking into the windows to see if there was something I wanted, and then doing whatever was necessary to get what I wanted.

Life as the Warrior was entirely different. I really was a knight in shining armor, and walking on my two little feet was like riding some great powerful horse, and looking around myself at the library or on the road was like viewing some great vista from a seat of royalty: I looked at all my subjects, all my children, around me, and dreamt up ways of serving them, of keeping them happy, and assuring their future and ultimate happiness. I gave them all I could, kind words, kindly looks, a pat on the back, what little money I had, and a few words of encouragement, with as much of the spiritual as I thought they could hear happily; while in the back of my mind I was also offering them great piles of jewels, deep spiritual realizations, all the things in the world that no man claimed his own—the blue of the sky, the sound of the sea, the flowers that grew on every mountain on the planet, and I did so sincerely, although no one ever knew, and I did so with the wish that all I offered they could one day possess, especially enlightenment itself, and above all I found a deep and contented joy growing within myself daily, hour by hour.

As the joy increased my thirst increased, for I knew that my lessons were not complete, and like a horse near water I knew I was near, nearer and nearer, and I felt nearly an obsession now to reach the goals I knew now were reachable: I wanted to find perfection, I knew I could reach my mother, I knew she was near now, and instinct told me that I was close enough now to see the Golden One again as well, and that the end of my searching, and the finding of what I sought, and my mother, and the masters of the Garden, and the Golden One would all before long join one with the other. And so I went again to the Garden, thinking that perhaps the night for this had come.

I remember distinctly the date it happened, nothing could make me forget, it was the 28th of July, and summer at its height. I entered the Garden late at night, well after the earth had cooled from the heat of the day, and sat on the foot of the bench beneath the carob, drinking in the sweet smell of the desert breezes, sweet respite from the still and burning feel of the daytime, a feel that struck the face and dried the nose and eyes, like the wind from an oven.

I sat and prepared to enter meditation, going through the preparatory steps slowly, with relish, as though I were putting on a soft old glove, or beginning a conversation with some dear old friend. I was nearly finished when I sensed a motion at the gate of the Garden, and then a small form moving quietly down the row of crimson desert roses along the northern wall. The form stooped at one bush, as though saying a silent prayer, and then moved off again.

I caught sight of the head of a monk, well-formed and cropped short, with velvet-like black hair, and then the robes and body followed. I had not seen much more than these brief clues before I found myself involuntarily on my feet, with my palms joined at my breast, bowed in deep respect. I glanced up almost in fear, in awe, for before me was Gautama, the Buddha himself, and although he was nothing like what I might have expected, there was absolutely no denying, and no questioning, who He was.

He was not tall, but only medium in height, and his frame was somewhat slight, and slightly bent, in a kind of modesty that nearly seemed like shyness. His every gesture was simple and graceful, as was his entire appearance, and his robes: clean, graceful, simply hung on his simple form, soft and natural with a lifetime of wear. His age no one could have guessed, I suppose I would say about 27 or 28, but his face gave no certain clue. It was simple itself, and the first impression, beside the modesty, was one of simple honesty: the eyes were gentle and open, rarely blinking, often down in modesty, and there was a quiet happiness in the way his face was held—in the slight but graceful smile, and the smooth, intelligent face. His skin and the rest were the same as yours or mine, it was not as though he were blazing in light or anything of the like, but there was a different kind of radiance about him, one with no color or shape, a kind of clear warmth that bathed his eyes and face, and his gentle

hands, all the way down to his humble, bare feet; and this warmth radiated forth and filled the Garden, and bathed my being, and bade me to bow, before One who seemed to neither need nor wish any bow. And I bowed.

"Sit," he spoke quietly, "sit, please sit." And I sat instinctively there, on the grass before the bench, and bowed again sitting, praying that he himself would sit there, on the bench. This he did quite naturally, although with a bit of hesitation, as though he did not consider himself worthy of such a throne. And he sat quietly, looking down at the grass, almost abashed, like a young girl alone before a stranger. We sat quietly.

After some time he reached his hand out towards me, and I saw that he had plucked one of the red roses from the bushes on his way in. He didn't speak, he only held it out towards me, as if asking me to look at it, which I did. No words passed between us, I simply looked at the rose, and have no idea what he himself may have been looking at, for I felt still too much in awe of him to gaze into his face.

He withdrew then the rose suddenly, and put three of his fingers under my chin, and raised my face slowly up to meet his eyes. And then he said "Rose," and reached the same fingers of both hands to my eyelids, and closed them, and kept his fingers there. In my mind I pictured a rose, a perfect red rose.

Then his fingers opened my eyes again, and he reached out towards me again, holding the rose, and said, "Do not think 'rose'." And I tried not to think 'rose,' I tried not to see the picture I had just seen of the rose, and I looked into his hand again. For just an instant, for just a brief flash, I saw a tiny corner of red, outlined against the dark of the night air, and then my eye jumped and saw something roundish and red, further down, and finally something green, and thin, and straight. And then in the next moment I was again looking at a rose.

"Again," he said simply.

He let me look at the rose, and then he pulled back his hand, and then he gently closed my eyelids, and then he said again, "Rose." I thought of 'rose,' there was the outline and color of a rose in my thoughts, and then he gently pushed my eyes open again, and again said "Do not think 'rose'." And then he opened his hand before me, and again, for a moment, my eyes danced across some colors and shapes, before an instant later I saw a rose in my mind, and before my eyes.

Then he stooped and touched his finger to the ground, and brought up on the tip of it a tiny black ant. He touched his finger to the side of the rose, and let the ant climb onto the rose; the ant began to race across the petals, leaning out over thin air and then reversing itself, racing across to the opposite side, leaning out in the air, nearly falling off the rose, and then racing further on

again, in an obvious panic. Gautama touched the rose to the ground, and the black ant raced off into the blades of the grass.

And then he cupped the rose in his hand, and all I could see was the back of his hand. He held the hand to his face, and opened his deep brown eyes wide, and with his head slightly cocked to the side looked at the rose himself, gazed upon the rose. All I could see was his eyes, but in his eyes I saw some kind of extraordinary contentment, some kind of extraordinary happiness with the rose, and I knew in that moment that he was seeing something that I could never in my present condition ever see: he was experiencing some profound state of bliss triggered by the same thing that I had looked at, and I knew at that moment that it could not be the same thing I had looked at. Gautama closed his hand gently around the rose, and turned those shining eyes to mine.

"For a moment," he said quietly, "you saw the rose before you thought 'rose,' and it was only a few simple shapes and pieces of color. Then your mind thought of these as 'rose.' The poor ant also perceived these same shapes and colors, but thought only 'threat,' and then 'death,' and ran for his life. When I looked at these same colors and pieces of shape, I saw all of eternity, and all the minds of every being in existence, and loved them."

Gautama paused, and closed his eyes, as if waiting for my mind to grasp his words, and then think on them clearly, before he continued. And then he reached out his hand again, and opened it, and asked me, "Who saw this thing right? What is this thing? Is it a rose? Is it the Lord of Death? Is it all humanity, and perfect love?"

In his presence I felt as though my mind were someone else's, as though it belonged to some great and enlightened saint, and I had no hesitation to answer, and no need to answer in words. The thing he had in his hand was each of these things, and all of these things, and none of these things. It was to each of the three beings who looked upon it truly what they saw; it was in sum all the things it appeared to be to all three; and it could never have been three completely different things at once. It was what each saw it to be.

He closed his hand again, and paused again. He leaned and whispered to me, fiercely, "See it now as eternity; see it now as all humanity, and know the perfect love for them that I do." And then he opened his hand again, and in almost a trance of joy I looked eagerly into the palm and saw—a simple, red, rose.

I closed my eyes in disappointment, and said only, "I cannot."

"I know," he said.

"Why?"

"You know very well; you see only what your mind forces you to see; you see only what the imprints in your mind allow you to see, even though you are looking upon exactly the same thing that I am looking upon, when I see all of eternity, and all of life, and feel all love for it."

I closed my eyes and thought "Rose." I opened my eyes and saw "Rose." He raised his legs up to the bench and crossed them, under his robes, and went into meditation. I crossed my legs, and I went into meditation. The silence grew. I lost the sounds of the Garden, and then I lost the smells and feel of the Garden, and then I lost the feeling of sitting in the Garden, and then finally I lost the feeling even of thinking, and even of myself. It was perfectly and totally still.

I saw emptiness. And it was only that, and I saw it. There was nothing else.

When it was over things began to come back. I was aware of coming down, and then I was aware of myself again. I was aware then, in that moment, for the first time, that I had seen emptiness.

I knew then that I had seen an Enlightened One, and so I knew then that Enlightened Ones really existed.

I knew then, perfectly, that I would myself become an Enlightened One, in the space of seven lifetimes, and so I knew then that my future lives really existed.

I knew then that the Path was perfectly true.

I knew they would not call me by my name when I became an Enlightened One.

I knew the seven lives would be good, no more real suffering, and surrounded by loving parents, and good and learned teachers, and spiritual friends and teachings, exactly as I needed, without fail.

I knew that what I had seen was true. I could never doubt these things again. I knew I was not mistaken, I knew I was not somehow deluded or crazy. I knew that no one, ever, could say anything that would ever make me doubt what I had seen.

I knew that I knew what every holy book in the world said; I knew that I knew the great ocean of knowledge entirely, as though it were reduced to a teardrop in a child's eye. And I knew the truth of these holy books, and I knew I must give my life to keep them in this world, for others to come after me.

I loved every living thing. A light came out of my chest, a powerful pillar of

light, with no color, and it went out, and it touched every living thing, and I knew then that I would always live for each of them, and only for them, and that there was nothing else for me ever to do.

I knew that pictures of the Enlightened Ones were true. I knew we had to care for them. I knew that I must bow down to them, and when it was time to rise, I threw myself on the ground before Them.

I knew I had seen a different reality, a true reality, a truly higher and pure reality. I knew there was no thing like this reality in the reality I had known. I knew that the reality I had known was not a pure reality. I knew there was nothing in this reality that could ever be pure. But I knew that, of all the things in this reality, the diamond was one thing that was in some small way close to being pure, purely hard, purely clear, and pure throughout, nearly.

I knew I would die. I knew my mind was not yet pure. I knew my mind was seeing things wrong, and always had, until the moment I saw emptiness. I knew that even now, once I had come down, I was again seeing things wrong, and would continue to do so until I was nearly enlightened. I knew I could read minds. I knew that, if I developed myself carefully, I could perform miracles.

I knew I was now someone different because, of all the people in the world, I had seen emptiness, and I had seen all these other things, and I no longer had to suffer like before. It was over with; I was on my way out, with certainty, with a sweet certainty that I would carry with me forever after.

I looked up to Gautama, in gratitude. He gazed down at me, in total silence, and complete joy. He knew everything.

The following selections are taken from Sunlight on the Path to Freedom, a commentary upon The Diamond Cutter Sutra written by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748) of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. The original root text of the sutra by Lord Buddha is included in darker type.

12 Destroying the Enemy: Mental Afflictions

२वा पर्रमः स्वाका प्रदेश प्रदेश प्रदेश प्रदेश में प्रदेश प्रत्य के स्वाक्ष प्रदेश प्र

योष्ठात्म। ध्रेष्ट्यात्मा क्षेत्रात्मा व्यव्यात्मा क्षेत्रात्मा व्यव्यात्मा क्षेत्रात्मा व्यव्यात्मा व्यव्यात्म व्यव्यात्मा व्यव्यात्म व्यव्यात्मा व्यव्यात्म व्यव्यात्म

O Conqueror, I declare that the Ones Thus Gone—those Destroyers of the Foe who are the Totally Enlightened Buddhas—reside in the highest of all those states that are free of the mental afflictions. I am, o Conqueror, a person who is free of desire; I am a foe destroyer.

But I do not, o Conqueror, think to myself, "I am a foe destroyer." For suppose, o Conqueror, that I did think to myself, "I have attained this very state, the state of a foe destoyer." If I did think this way, then the One Thus Gone could never have given me the final prediction: he could never have said: "O son of noble family, o Subhuti, you will reach the highest of all those states that are free of the mental afflictions. Because you stay in no state at all, you have reached the state free of mental afflictions; you have reached what we call the 'state free of mental afflictions.'

13 The Emptiness of the Goal

In an ultimate sense then there is nothing for one to achieve, and nothing that helps one achieve it, and no one even to do the achieving. But we can say even further that, again speaking ultimately, there is no dharma at all that one takes up, and practices.

14 The Marriage of Emptiness and Karma

निर्। ब्रूट र्झ्ट ब्रट वह्यायी नृतु अदे त्यस्य स्त्री प्रते त्या ने प्रते स्तर त्यु र स्तर व्यु र स्तर व्यु र स्तर व्यु र स्त्री स्तर स्त्री स्त्री

At some point you will gain a really correct understanding of how, despite the fact that results do come from causes, they do not come from these causes through any nature of their own. At that moment you will finally grasp the way in which Middle-Way philosophy describes how, despite the fact that things are empty of any natural existence, they can still quite properly work and function as they do. At that point too you will have discovered the Middle Way itself, the path where the appearance of the normal world and emptiness itself are inseparably married together.

How the Failure to Understand Emptiness Causes Mental Afflictions

त्युः श्चिरः । राजायर् विश्वास्त्रः यहर् । यहा स्विरः स्वरः स्वरः

Why is it so? Because, o Subhuti, there was a time when the King of Kalingka was cutting off the larger limbs, and smaller appendages, of my body. At that moment there came into my mind no conception of a self, nor or of a sentient being, nor of a living being, nor of a person—I had no conception at all. But neither did I not have any conception.

For what reason is it so? Because long ago there was a time, o Subhuti, when the king of Kalingka got the evil suspicion that I had engaged in relations with his woman. And so he was cutting off the larger limbs, and smaller appendages of my body. (The latter refers to the fingers and toes.)

At that moment I practiced patience, keeping my mind on an understanding of the lack of true existence to each of the three elements to the act of patience. As I focussed on the "me" which exists nominally, there came into my mind no conception where I held any belief in some truly existing "me": and so I had no conception of anything from a truly existing "self" up to a truly existing "person."

At that moment I had no conception at all of any such conception that something was existing truly. At the same time though it was neither as if I had no other, nominal conceptions at all. What Subhuti is saying here is the following. I did have the thought that I would have to keep my patience: I did have the thought to take the pain on willingly, and not to be upset about the harm being done to me. And I did have the kind of conception where I reconfirmed my knowledge of how I had perceived that no existing object has any true existence.

ारे खेरे खेर लेखा रम वर्चेरा माय हे रेवे के मरमा हु वर्ष असुर वा रेवे के

चेत्राग्रीटावर्त्तुंद्राच्याः स्वित्राण्याः विद्याः स्वित्राच्याः स्वत्राच्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्राच्याः स्वत्राच्याः स्वत्राचः स्वत्राच्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्याः स्वत्राच्याः स

Why is it so? Suppose, o Subhuti, that at that moment any conception of a self had come into my mind. Then the thought to harm someone would have come into my mind as well.

The conception of some sentient being, and the conception of some living being, and the conception of person, would have come into my mind. And because of that, the thought to harm someone would have come into my mind as well.

त्रशुर्यं विश्वास्त्र विश्वास

Here is the reason why it is so. Suppose that at that moment any conception of a self, where I thought of "me" as existing in an ultimate way, had come into my mind. Or suppose any of the other conceptions mentioned had come into my mind. Then the thought to harm someone would have come into my mind as well; but the fact is that it did not.

16 Emptiness and Building Your Own Paradise

The Conqueror bespoke:

Suppose, o Subhuti, that some bodhisattva were to say, "I am working to bring about paradises." This would not be spoken true.

यो क्ष्मान्ते वे क्षे प्राप्त क्ष्मान्ते विद्या वि

Lord Buddha wishes to indicate that, in order for a person to reach the enlightenment described above, he or she must first bring about a paradise in which to achieve the enlightenment. Therefore the Conqueror says to Subhuti,

Suppose some bodhisattva were to say or think to himself—while holding a belief in true existence, and referring to ultimate existence—"I am working to bring about paradises." This statement would not be spoken true.

ब्रिट्यम्द्रियः क्षेत्रः व्यास्त्रेत्। ब्रिट्यम्द्रियः क्षेत्रः व्याद्रियः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रे व्याद्रः व्याद्रः द्याः क्षेद्रः व्याद्रेत्। ब्रिट्यम्द्रियाकः यक्षः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद् व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रेत्। व्याद्रेत्। ब्रिट्यम्द्रियः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्रः व्याद्

Why is it so? Because the Ones Thus Gone have stated that these paradises, these "paradises," these lands that are put there do not even exist. And this is why we call them "paradise."

यायभ्याशासासी विदासायास्याशासायात्वेत्रास् । नित्यास्यस्य स्मास्य स्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य स्मास्य

पर्यासुत्यासुः रवाशीः वर्षावाः वर्षवाः वर्षे व्यवः वर्षाः वर्षे वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षे वर्षः वर्षे वर्षः वर्षे व

Why is this the case? The reason is that the Ones Thus Gone have stated that these perfect paradises, these places where you achieve your enlightenment, are put there like an illusion; that is, they occur because a great many causes and conditions have come together. But lands which have been put there in an ultimate sense, say the Buddhas, do not even exist. Since though they do exist to that state of mind which performs no check or analysis, we can nominally call them "paradise."

This fact refers not only to the paradise of a Buddha, but also to each and every thing which has ever been put here: to both the world where beings live and the beings who live in the world. All of these are simply a label put on the collection of a number of parts: they are all the same as a house, for example. And all of these are such that, should you break them down mentally all the way to their tiniest atoms, you would reach the point where they are nothing at all. (This is the briefest sketch of the meaning for you.)

17
The Emptiness of Every Object

त्रश्चा द्रश्चा त्रिश्चा त्रुश्चा त्यूष्या त्रुश्चा त्रुश्चा त्रुश्चा त्रुश्चा त्रुश्चा त्रुश्चा त्रु

O Subhuti, it is thus: Suppose, for example, that someone's body were to grow this large—suppose it were to grow as large as the king of all mountains, Mt. Sumeru. What do you think, o Subhuti? Would that person's body be large?

And Subhuti replied,

O Conqueror, such a body would be large. O you who have Gone to Bliss, such a body would be large. And why so? Because Those Gone Thus have stated that it could never be a thing at all. And this is why we call it a "body." Because Those Gone Thus have stated that it could never be a thing at all, we call it a "large body."

Lord Buddha wishes to show that the above applies not only to outer things such as paradises, but also to the beings who inhabit this world: to objects such as the body of a person. He wishes to show that they too exist only because conditions have come together, and not in an ultimate way. Therefore he asks **Subhuti**,

Suppose some person's body were to grow to the size of the king of mountains, Mt. Sumeru. What do you think? Would that body be something large?

And Subhuti respectfully replies,

Such a body would be large. Those who have Gone Thus though have stated that this same body exists only as a term applied to the heaps, to some collection of a great many parts. It could never be a thing at all which existed in essence; that is, it could never be something which did not depend on its parts, say they. And this is why we can call such a body "large," in the sense that words are used in the everyday world.

Here a large body is just a representative example; we are meant to apply this reasoning to all physical objects, large or small. The entire statement here in the sutra is aimed at showing us how to meditate upon the fact that each and every detail of the world and the beings who inhabit it are all empty of any natural existence.

18 Sacred Ground

वर्गीरः र्रा । श्रास्त्रियाश्चर, श्री शक्त्र्रास्त्र प्राप्तर, वर्गीरः र्रा । श्रास्त्र श्रीयाश्चर, वर्गीरः र्रा । श्रास्त्र श्रीयाश्चर, वर्गिरः र्रा । श्रास्त्र श्रीयाश्चर, वर्गिरः र्रा । श्रीयाश्चर, वर्गिरः वर्गिरः र्रा । श्रीयाश्चर, वर्गिरः वर्ग

And I tell you further, o Subhuti: any place where this sutra is taught thereby becomes a place worthy of the offerings of the entire world, with its gods, and men, and demigods. It becomes a place which is worthy of their prostrations, and worthy of their circumambulations. That place becomes something like a stupa.

19 Getting Rid of Old Bad Karma

पर्यायर्चेत्र। त्रेयाश्राणुःत्वस्यात्रत्य। र्योयायात्रत्यायत्ते स्वायत्त्रेत्रेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वायाय पर्वात्वेत्र। त्रेयाश्राणुःत्वस्यात्रत्य। र्योयायात्रत्यायत्ते स्वेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वेते स्वाय

वी अवर पर द्यीर। विव रि. अवर पर द्यीर र्

O Subhuti, any son or daughter of noble family who takes up a sutra like this, or who holds it, or reads it, or comprehends it fully, will suffer. They will suffer intensely.

पदः र्ष्यायक्ष्यः श्रीट्रप्तरः प्रश्नुरः प्रथानः श्रीतः श

Here in a statement over and above the one before, Lord Buddha says,

O Subhuti, consider any son or daughter of noble family who takes up this sutra, who holds it in their hands, and so on—any living being who does these things and then puts the meaning of the sutra into practice. It is entirely possible that such a person could experience some pain, that they could suffer, and suffer intensely, through various kinds of illness, or conflict with others, or being criticized, or chained, or beaten, or anything of the like. It could happen, but it would be no great problem, because. . .

शरका क्षीका ग्री ग्री दे एक प्राप्त प्रत्ये प्राप्त प्रत्ये प्रत्य प्रत

Why is it so? Because, o Subhuti, such beings are purifying non-virtuous karma from the entire string of their previous lives, karma that would have taken them to the three lower realms. As they purify this karma, it causes them to suffer here in this life. As such they will succeed in cleaning away the karma of these non-virtuous deeds of their previous lifetimes, and they will as well achieve the enlightenment of a Buddha.

क्रुं अर्ळदरे दे दे दे दे दे दे दे हो। बो अंअअर उद दे द्या यो अर दे के र द्या पर दे दि र हा अदे त्रासुः से 'दवो 'दवे 'वसा के दार्थ 'दव 'से दावासुस दुः क्री 'दव क्री दाय है । नगः नुषः यः ने : नगः त्रस्य रुनः ग्रीः वर्षः नु : वे : वे ने : श्रेनः ग्रीः वे गः वः श्लेवः ने : सूगः বন্ধূঅ:ব্রীঝ:মর্ম:ব:ব্রি:ঝ্রুবঝ:গ্রীঝ:ঠ্র:মব্ম:ঝূ:মর্র:ঝ্র:বর্না:বর্র:অঝ:ব্:ব্রা व्यथ्य ७८ . ५ विट . य. मुं . २ वा. तर . ५ वीर . हो । अट य. मै य. ग्री. वीट . क्व. ग्रीट . मैं र . टे. सूच. यर विशुर है। विर धुन या वर्सन यदे वाक्षेत्र ये गुन हु र्श्वेट यदे र्स्ट्रेवरा गुन है ब्रेंगा'यश' इस्रश'ग्री' स' पापन्या' वहें दार्चेस ब्रें। बर 'य' न्ट 'बस्रश' उन सिंदु र पापट ब्र्यायर प्रश्नुर विशायवर मा दम प्रश्नेर क्री प्रदेशका समाय हिम्माय हिम्माय हिम्माय हिम्माय हिम्माय हिम्माय हिम र्शे ।द्वारी सूर देवा वी विषय पार्शेवाय व्याप्त व्याप्त विषय विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था गुर। दर दर्गेर भ्रे पदे भ्रेवा भेर गुर। । अर्वे र्वे र व र अ ग्री अ दर्गर। । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । । मुश्चर्यार्थे। । द्येर द्यार्थेद यहन गुर दुः सुदः देंद मिलेर सेम्यायाहद सेद द ह्युःगुःरोःक्रुःनःस्ररःनन्गःवहें दर्शेटःत्र्यःदःदे। नयम्यायःयवैःययःरेःर्थेनःगुटः पदेःश्रेनःयशः इसः पक्षयः पदे। । यशः वाल्यः दयेवः तुषः सः ध्येवः है। । युवः हैवाः व्रेर'य'बर'धेर'र्रे । ब्रिय'म्यूरय'य'खूर'र्रे।

For what reason is it so? Because such beings are purifying great non-virtuous karma that they have committed both in this life and in their lifetimes past—karma so serious that it would normally have taken them to the three lower realms. As such, the results of all these deeds are ripening here in this very life. Thus one is suffering pain, and by force of this suffering he or she is "cleaning away"—that is, purifying—all of this non-virtuous karma. As such, one will quickly achieve the enlightenment of a Buddha.

The force of an antidote action consisting of making great efforts in the perfection of wisdom is destroying the grasping to some self-existence, the very root of all non-virtuous deeds. This is why the text goes on to say that one will achieve freedom and the state of omniscience. And since the text does say this, then needless to say one could destroy the karma that is leading you to a birth in the lower realms. The way in which this works is explained in texts such as the *Blaze of Reasoning* and others. As the *Sutra of the Great Liberation* says as well,

Even though one may have the bad karma To take his birth in the three lower realms, A simple headache will clean it away.

Suppose for example that a seed is planted, but is then deprived completely of water, or fertilizer, or warmth, or the rest. Then it would never sprout.

Here the case is the same. If you are able to eliminate grasping to some selfnature, then none of the karmas you have collected, regardless of how many there are, can ever ripen forth. This is because their companion, the mental afflictions, are absent. As the *Commentary on Valid Perception* states,

No further karmas can ever project their results In one who has gone beyond the desire for existence; This is because the conditions have all been finished.

20 The Emptiness of the Dharma

प्रवादर्भित्र। यदे:हि:क्रुस्रानु:श्रेस्रस्रान्दे:र्स्यान्यां वर्ष्याः वर्ष्याः वर्ष्याः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्याः वर्षे स्थाने:वादः प्यदः प्यदः वर्ष्यः वर्षेत्रः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षेत्रः वर्ष्यः वर्षेत्रः वर्ष्यः वर्षेत्रः वर्षः वर्षेत्रः वर्ष

O Subhuti, what do you think? Is there any dharma at all which the Ones Thus Gone ever speak?

And Subhuti respectfully replied,

O Conqueror, none of the dharmas ever spoken by the Ones Thus Gone even exist.

यिवेयाश्वास्त्राक्ष्याः सम्बद्धाः साम्राम्यक्ष्याः सम्प्राम्यक्ष्यः स्वास्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्वास्त्राम्यक्षः स्वास्त्रम्यक्षः स्व

In the part before this one, Lord Buddha mentioned "the perfection of wisdom spoken by the Ones Thus Gone," and explained how it could be the perfection of wisdom. Someone might think to themselves, "Are there though any other dharmas which were spoken by the Ones Thus Gone, and which *do* exist in an ultimate sense?"

In order to answer this question with an emphatic "No!" the Buddha poses a question to **Subhuti: "Is there any** such **dharma at all?"**

In reply, Subhuti offers up the following answer: "None of the dharmas ever spoken by the Ones Thus Gone even exist, at least in an ultimate sense." The point here is very similar to the one before, where it said that the teaching of the dharma by the Ones Thus Gone did not even exist.

The Middle Way: Avoiding the Two Extremes

The following selections are from the 18th Chapter of the *Commentary on the Three Principal Paths*, written by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941).

સાર્ચીયાતાતાત્વકેયાયમાં મુસ્તાત્વા સ્થેત્રા સાર્ચીયાતા સુધા તાલુ સાર્ચીયાતા તાલુ સાર્ચીયાતા સુધા તાલુ સાર્ચીયા ત

The position of the Implication group though is that no particular object you can choose has any true existence, aside from merely appearing this way; and understanding this prevents you from going to the extreme of thinking things exist—that is, exist in an ultimate way. And because this mere appearance itself cannot exist on its own, an understanding of emptiness prevents your falling into the extreme of thinking things do not exist—that is, do not exist in a conventional way.

यहेत्र-तर्याक्ष-स्वेत्र-स्ट-निव्यक्ष-स्वीक्ष-स्वाक् -स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक्ष-स्वाक

Once something is dependent there is no possibility for it to be anything else but something which does not exist naturally—something which cannot stand on its own. This is because it must then occur in dependence on the collection of parts which serve as the basis that receives our label. Look at the example of some feeble old man, unable to rise from his chair by himself, who must seek some other support to get up—he cannot stand on his own. Here it's a similar case: no object can stand on its own, no object can exist just naturally, so long as it must depend on any other factor.

The Fourfold Teaching of the Middle Way

श्चान्यायान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त् श्चान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त् श्चान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त

The real sages of the Middle Way school make a fourfold distinction: they say that nothing exists naturally, but not that nothing exists at all; everything exists merely by convention, but everything exists without existing naturally. The point of error for the Functionalists and those other schools is their failure to distinguish between these four: two kinds of "nothing exists" and two kinds of "everything exists."

23 The Emptiness of Emptiness

वस्त्र १ क्षेत्र १ क्षेत्

So we've shown that no object in the universe exists truly; we've given "because it's dependent" as our reason for saying so; and we've demonstrated that these two facts can prevent one from falling into either extreme. This too is why we see statements like the following, from *Root Wisdom:*

Everything is right for any thing For which the state of emptiness is right.

Or the well-known sutra lines:

Form is emptiness, Emptiness form.

त्र्या माध्या देन्वित्र-दुर्ग्य । क्ष्र्र-माद्र्य । क्ष्रि-माहेत्र-त्र्यं । विश्व-क्ष्याय-माध्या देनवित्र-दुर्ग्य-क्ष्र-माद्र्य । क्ष्रि-माहेत्य-त्र्यु-निर्म्य-स्य महित्य-क्ष्र-माहेत्य-क्ष्र-माद्र्य । क्ष्रि-माहेत्य-क्ष्र-माहेत्य-क्ष्याय-क्ष्

These last lines by the way are stated to show that dependence is itself empty, and emptiness itself dependent. It helps your understanding of this point if you take the same pattern and read it as

I am emptiness, Emptiness me.

यक्षिरातासास्त्रीत्त्वास्त्रीयात्वीरास्त्राच्यात्वास्त्राचित्राच्यात्वास्त्राचित्राच्याः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व

In short, concluded our Lama, the laws of cause and effect are all totally proper for any entity which is empty of any natural existence. If you can just keep yourself from falling into the two extremes, you will make no great other blunders in your effort to develop correct view.

24 How Empty Things Still Work

We return now to the Diamond Cutter and its commentary:

१२.५.पक्षेत्र.धे। सर्र.यद्ग.यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यात्यत्यात्यत्याः भ्रम्याः भ्रम्याः अत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यः ।

It is thus. Any living beings who receive an explanation of this sutra and who are not made afraid, and are not frightened, and who do not become frightened, are truly wondrous.

यशिरका बिकार्टा स्टाविकान्निकानिकान्निकान

यश्रीरश्राताःस्रेरार्

Here is the reason. In future days, **certain living beings will receive**, they will listen to, **an explanation of** the meaning of the words of **this sutra**. And yet **they will not be made afraid**, **and they will not be frightened**, **and they will not become** extremely **frightened**, by any such thought as: "If this is so, and if nothing at all exists in a true way, then all the ways in which things like karma and its consequences work cannot be right, and so really nothing at all can work."

Rather they will find a greater belief, an even greater faith, in all these objects. And beings like this will be **truly wondrous**.

If things did exist in a true way, then it would be improper to say that they ever changed. And then it would be improper, it would never be right, to describe all the workings of things like karma and its consequences.

The way in which all things work, and nirvana itself, and everything else are all quite proper. And none of these objects has any true existence, none of them has any nature of their own. How all this can be is described by Lord Tsongkapa in his *Praise from Dependence*:

Reaching the state of nirvana could never occur, And elaborations too could never be stopped, If objects had any nature of their own, because A nature could not be stopped, You stated.

He also says,

Since things are empty of any nature And the way things work is right, There is no contradiction between them.

Those who see things the opposite Think nothing can work with emptiness...

য়৾৽ঀয়য়ৢ৾ঀ৽ৼৼয়ৢ৾ঀ৽য়ৼৢঀৢ। ঀঽৢয়৽ঀৢয়৽ঀ৾৽ড়ৼ৽ঀড়৽ঀৼ৽ঀৢ।

See anything
Brought about by causes
As like a star,
An obstruction of the eye,
A lamp, an illusion,
The dew, or a bubble;
A dream, or lightning,
Or else a cloud.

तदुःसैटःस्.कि.श्यानाःजास्त्र्यानाः पद्मितः यो विद्यायानीट्यान्यः यान्त्रायान्यः यान्त्रयः यान्त्यः यान्त्रयः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः यान्त्यः

Next comes a concluding summary, which shows how all **things brought about by causes** are empty of any nature of their own, and are also impermanent. All this is contained in the verse about the "star, an obstruction of the eye, a lamp," and the rest.

We could take for example the five heaps—physical form and the rest—or any such objects. All these can be described in the following metaphors.

स्मर्या स्मर्था के स्मर्थ के सम्मर्थ के सम्म्यू के सम्मर्थ के सम्म्यू के सम्मर्थ के सम्मर्थ के सम्मर्थ के सम्म्य के सम्म्य के सम्म्य

Stars appear at night, and then by day they no longer appear. The parts to a person and other things brought about by causes are just the same. If a person's mind is full of the darkness of ignorance, then they appear to exist in an ultimate sense. [Correcting an error in Tibetan text, *stong* for *snang*.] Suppose though that the sun rises—the sun of the wisdom which perceives that nothing exists truly. Then these objects no longer appear in an ultimate sense. As such we should see these things **as** being **like a star.**

त्रमान्यस्य स्वार्थितः स्वर्थितः स्वार्थितः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वर्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार

Suppose your **eyes** are blocked by some **obstruction** in them—by particles of dust or something of the like. The thing that you're trying to look at then doesn't look the way it really is; rather, you see it some other way. It's just the same with the eye of the mind when it's blocked by the obstruction of ignorance. Things brought about by causes then appear to this mind as something other than what they are.

The flame of a butter **lamp**, supported by a thin plant wick, flares and then quickly dies out. Caused things, each supported their various causes and conditions, also go through a continuous process of rising and quickly dying out.

पर-क्रूट-र्ट्र। पर-क्रूट-र्ट्र।

An illusion is something that looks different than what is actually there. Things brought about by causes also appear to exist truly, to a mistaken state of mind.

Dew vanishes quickly; things with causes are the same—they die away speedily, without lasting even into the second instant of their existence.

Bubbles pop up at random, because some water is stirred up or something of the like, and then they burst and disappear just as suddenly. Caused things work the same way: when the various conditions all come together, they pop up suddenly, and then they die out just as suddenly.

Dreams are an example of a misperception, which is due to the affects of sleep on the mind. Things brought about by causes as well are misapprehended, they seem to exist truly, to the mind which is affected by ignorance.

Lightning flashes and dies out quickly. Caused things too rise and die out quickly, depending on the conditions that assemble to bring them about.

Clouds are something that gather and fade in the sky, depending on the wishes of the serpent-beings and such. Things brought about by causes are the same; depending on the influence of karma which is either communal or not, they rise or die out.

Each of the metaphors above is also meant to represent how no object brought about by causes has any true existence.

श्रेर्यात्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त विश्वास्त्र विश्वास

To put it briefly, Lord Buddha is telling us that we should "See that each and every thing brought about by causes is impermanent, and is empty of any nature of its own, all just like the nine examples given above." We should also consider these lines as indicating both the lack of self to the person, and the lack of self to phenomena.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Three: The Vows of the Bodhisattva, Part One

The following selection is taken from the Commentary on the Three Principal Paths, an explanation by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941) of the famous root text by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

1
The Suffering of Living Beings

प्रान्त्र्वास्त्र्र्यास्त्रेत्र्यत्रेत्यत्र्वेत्यत्र्वे प्रित्वास्त्रत्यास्त्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः स्त्रात्र्यस्य प्रान्त्रस्य प्रान्ति प्रानि प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रानि प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्रान्ति प्

ব্রিকামেকামের্ট্রব

The second section in our explanation of the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being describes how to develop this wish. As the next two verses say,

(7,8)

They're swept along on four fierce river currents, Chained up tight in past deeds, hard to undo, Stuffed in a steel cage of grasping "self," Smothered in the pitch-black ignorance.

In a limitless round they're born, and in their births Are tortured by three sufferings without a break; Think how your mothers feel, think of what's happening To them: try to develop this highest wish.

निर्श्वर्यक्ष्यः द्यम्याः भेरः ख्रुरः क्षा विश्वरः वर्ष्य्यास्य स्थ्यः ग्रीः स्थ्यः प्यत्यः । विश्वरः वर्ष्य्यास्य स्थ्यः ग्रीः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः । विश्वरः वर्ष्य्यास्य स्थ्यः निर्श्वरः स्थ्यः । विश्वरः वर्ष्य्यास्य स्थ्यः वर्ष्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः । वर्ष्यरः वर्ष्यास्य स्थ्यः वर्ष्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः । वर्ष्यरः वर्ष्यस्य स्थ्याः स्थ्यः स्थयः स्यः स्थयः स्

।श्रेस्रश्चर्यः से से से से स्वर्यः वा । द्रयमः मृः से दः या चर्याः वर्दे दः छेदः । । से से वदः प्यें कः मृकः द्रयमः से दः दु। । वङ्क्षुवः यसः वर्दे दः यः ङ्क्षेश्वः छे दर्गेश्व। । ब्लेशः दरः ।

We may begin with another pair of verses, from The Bodhisattva's Life:

Even just wishing you could stop A headache another person has Can bring you merit without measure Because of the helpful intent you feel.

What need then to mention the wish That you could stop the immeasurable pain Of every being, and put every one In a state of measureless happiness?

निर्देन्यकाः भूषाः पर्वेश विर्देन्यकाः भूष्यः प्रदेश्यकाः प्रदेश विर्देश्यकाः प्रदेश्यकाः प्रदेश विर्देश्यकाः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः विर्वेशः विर्वेशेशः विर्वेशेशः विर्वेशेशः विर्वेशः विर्वेशेशः विर्वेशेश

The Sutra that Viradatta Requested says as well,

Were the merit of the wish for enlightenment To take on some kind of physical form It would fill the reaches of space itself And then spill over farther still.

2 Every Being Has Been Your Mother

श्चीयःतयुः रुवाद्यात्तात्वरुः श्चीयः वाद्यात्यात्वर्थः व्याद्यात्त्रः व्याद्यः स्वाद्यः स्वतः स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वतः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वतः स्वतः स्वादः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वादः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स

The next step is the meditation where you recognize that every living being is your mother. Gaining this recognition is much easier if you apply the line of reasoning mentioned in the *Commentary on Valid Perception* for demonstrating the infinite regression of one's awareness. We'll present this reasoning here, in brief.

Your awareness of today is a mental continuation of the awareness you had yesterday. This year's awareness is a mental continuation of the awareness you had the year before. Just so, your awareness over this entire life is a mental continuation of the awareness you had in your former life. The awareness you had in your former life was, in turn, a mental continuation of the awareness you had in the life before that. You can continue back in a regression like this and absolutely never reach some point where you can say, "Prior to this, I had no awareness." This then proves the infinite regression of one's awareness.

My own circle of life then must also be beginningless, and the births I have taken as well can have no starting point. There exists no place where I have never taken birth. I have taken birth in every single place, countless times. There exists no creature whose body I have not worn. I have worn every kind of body, countless times. Just the lives I have taken as a dog are themselves beyond any number to count. And the same is true for every living being.

देश'त'श्रेश्रश'ठत'वदेश'रद'यी'श'श'तुश'तु'त'यिवेता'गुद'शेद। श्रेशश'उत'रे' देश'गुद'रद'यी'श'युदश'शेद'य'रे'तुश'य'त'श्रूया'प्येता शे'यिवेता'सुवे'हेत'य'

Therefore there exists no being who has never been my mother. Absolutely every single one of them has been my mother a countless number of times. Even the number of times that each has been my mother in just my births as a human is past all counting too.

र्द्धताताः देशः वेशः विषान् द्वाः शः श्रेशः नरः व्याः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स् इतः त्यः तेशः विशः विषान् द्वाः सः श्रेशः नरः स्वाः स्वा

Do this meditation over and over until you gain a deep-felt certainty that each and every living being has been your mother, over and over, countless times.

3 The Kindness of Your Mother

देन्य देन देन देन त्या प्राप्त के प्राप्त क

Developing a sense of gratitude is the next step, and you can start by taking your mother in this present life. She began her hardships for me while I was still in her womb, gladly taking it upon herself to avoid anything she felt might hurt me—even down to the food she ate—treating herself with care, as though she were sick. For nine months and ten days she carried me in her womb, looking at her own body as though it belonged to someone else, someone very ill, and hesitating even to take big steps.

क्षेत्रः श्रेश्वरायदे क्षेत्रः स्वरायाः न्त्रायाः स्वरायाः स्वराय

र्केर केर में गुरा

As she gave me birth, my mother was torn with violent suffering, excruciating pain, and yet still felt an overwhelming joy, as though she had discovered some precious gem that would grant her any wish.

यह्माग्रीमायस्या वित्ते स्वाप्त वित्र स्वाप्त वित्ते स्वाप्त स्वाप्त वित्ते स्वाप्त स्व

Right then I knew absolutely nothing more than to cry and wave my arms around somehow. I was totally helpless. Totally stupid. Incapacitated. Nothing more than some baby chick with a red-rubber beak still yet to harden. But she swayed me on her fingertips, and pressed me to her body's warmth, and greeted me with a smile of love.

चर्षेय। भदुःश्लेष्मान्यायम् वर्षेय। योर्च्रायाराष्ट्रमा श्रायाद्रायायम् स्वायायाय्येया र्यायः पदःश्रेषाः योषाय्यस्य। श्रेष्यमायमास्येमा श्रायाद्रायायाः प्रमाय्याः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्व

With joyful eyes she gazed on me, and wiped the snot from my face with her lips, and cleaned my filthy shit with her hands. Sometimes she chewed my food for me, and fed me things like milky porridge straight from her mouth to mine. She did her best to protect me from any hurt. She did her best to get me any good.

३.८ची.चा.सूचान्नात्वा चार्स्य स्त्रात्वा चार्स्य स्त्रात्वा स्त्रा स्त्रात्वा स्त्रात्वा स्त्रात्वा स्त्रात्वा स्त्रात्वा स्त्रात्व

८५७ स्थान स्थानिक स्

In those days I had to look to her for everything; good or bad, happy or sad, all the hope I could have lay in one person: mother. But for her kindness, I wouldn't have lasted an hour; they could have set me out in the open right then and some birds or a dog would have come and made a meal of me—I'd have no hope of coming out alive. Every single day she protected me from harms that could have taken my life, no less than a hundred times. Such was her kindness.

यमान्तुः प्रविम् यसम्बद्धाः स्थान्यः स्थाः स्टामीशः मुद्याः स्थाः स्थाः

And while I was growing up she gathered together whatever I needed, avoiding no bad deed, and no suffering, and caring nothing for what other people might say of her. All the money and things she had she handed over to me, hesitating to use anything for herself.

Paying Back Your Mother's Kindness

यश्चित्रम्।

यश्चित्रम्।

देव:ग्रीकाहि:लेर:पश्चितःश्च

Look now, concluded our Lama, at the way any common animal—a dog or bird, even the tiny sparrow—shows affection for its young, and cares for it well. From watching this we can imagine what kindness we were given too.

यभ्रीटश्रात्तवुःश्राश्राश्राश्चर्यः स्थाश्चर्याः श्वाश्चरः तवुः विष्ठः विष्ठः विश्वरः विश्व

The next step in gaining the wish for enlightenment is to develop a wish to repay this great kindness. So every living being is my mother, and has given me her loving care over and over endlessly, for time with no beginning. And we know from what was described above that they are being swept along by four great currents, out to sea—to the vast expanse of the ocean of cyclic life. They are tormented, without a break, by the three types of suffering, and all the other pains. Their situation is desperate.

And here am I, their child. Right now I have a chance to rescue them from this ocean of cyclic life. Suppose I simply sit and bide my time, and give no thought to them. This is the lowest a person could stoop—base and absolutely shameless.

प्रथा

प

Right now I could give them things that they would be happy to get—food, or clothes, or beds to sleep on, whatever. But these are only some temporary happiness within the circle of life. The very highest way of repaying their kindness would be to put them into the state of ultimate happiness. So let me decide within myself that every living being must come to have every happiness. And every one should be freed as well from every form of pain.

5 Love and Compassion

चर्झ् श्रश्नात्मश्चिश्रश्नात्मत्म् हुन्हुन् श्रियोश्चारुष्यं चर्झे श्रश्नात्मश्चिश्रश्नात्मत्म हुन् श्रियोश्चारुष्यं चर्चे प्राचित्म विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास वित

Right now it's absurd to say that these beings have any kind of pure happiness—they don't even have any of the impure kinds. Every single thing they think is happiness is, in its essence, nothing more than pain. They want wantables but don't want to know about doing the good deeds that bring happiness. They want no unwantables but don't want to know about giving up the bad deeds that bring pain. They act ass backwards: they do what they shouldn't and don't what they should. And so my dear aged mothers, these living beings, are made to suffer.

"How good it would be if they could all find every happiness, and every cause of happiness.

I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

"How good it would be if they could all be free of every pain, and every cause of pain.

I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

Let these two trains of thought run through your mind; meditate on them over and over again. Then you will come to feel the very strongest loving-kindness and compassion.

6 Taking Responsibility Yourself

Some people might come up with the idea that "Why should I take upon myself this great load, of every living being? There are plenty of Buddhas and bodhisattvas around to guide them on their way." This kind of thought though is absolutely improper. It's base. It's shameless. It's as if your mother in this life was hungry, and parched, and you expected someone else's child to go and give her food and drink. But it's you for whom she has cared, and the responsibility of paying her back has fallen only to you.

It's the same with all these living beings, who for beginningless time have served as my mother so many times, and who in each of these times cared for me in every way with the kindness of this present mother. Returning their kindness is no business of anyone else at all, not for some Buddha or bodhisattva—it is my responsibility, and only mine.

यश्रभः तीयोशः द्याः प्रीत्वश्रः याः प्रदः स्थाः यश्रभः याः स्वाः स्थाः स्थाः

So someone is going to do it—to make sure every sentient being has every happiness, and never a single pain. It is going to be myself; I'll rely on no one else. I by myself will see to it that every single being comes to have every single happiness. And I by myself will see to it that every single being gets free of every single pain. I will by myself put them into the state of the Lama, the state of Buddhahood. Meditate strongly on these thoughts; they are the step we call the "extraordinary form of personal responsibility."

7 I Must Become a Buddha

I may be able to develop this noble intention, but the fact is that I'm completely incapable of leading a single being to Buddhahood—much less every one of them. Who then has the capacity? This power is had by a fully enlightened Buddha—only by him, and by no one else at all. If I can reach the same state, I will by definition have brought both mine and others' benefit to its perfection. And then every single ray of light that emanates from me,

whether it be an action of my body, or my speech, or my thoughts, will have the power to accomplish the ends of countless sentient beings.

नेश्चन्यः श्वेष्ठाः अवश्वाः अवश्वाः अवश्वाः भूतः श्वेष्ठाः श्वेष्

And so, for the sake of every living being, I will do anything I can to achieve this one great goal—the state of a Buddha—with every speed. Think this way to yourself, and do anything you can to develop the genuine wish to reach enlightenment for every living being.

While you practice these meditations to develop the wish for enlightenment, you can also reflect that—when you achieve Buddhahood—you will by the way automatically gain everything you need for yourself as well. Our Lama mentioned that this point was stated in Lord Tsongkapa's exposition on the Steps of the path as being very helpful in preventing a person from slipping to the lesser way.

8 Love is the Greatest Practice

Nowadays when you go up to someone and ask him what his very most important practice is, he'll tell you he's meditating on one of those powerful tutelary deities. You don't meet people who say their chief practice is meditating on the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. Much less, for in fact it's quite difficult to find anyone who even realizes that he should make this wish his centermost practice.

9

Why Those Who Follow Tantra Must Keep the Lower Vows Too

The following selection is taken from the Highway for Bodhisattvas.

१२.५२.४.ईश्रामाम् राज्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम् यात्याम् अत्याम् अत्याम अत

Therefore the idea that those who are keeping the higher vows must give up the lower vows is much like a fierce rain of hail, which descends to destroy the very root of the teachings of the victorious Buddhas, and chops down the rich crops of all the goodness and happiness that could come to every living creature. It is the totally blind idea of a person who has absolutely no understanding of the essential points of the important scriptures of the entire range of Buddhist schools. As such you must carry this idea far away from you, and throw it out like rubbish.

10 How to Take the Bodhisattva Vows

The first selection is from the String of Shining Jewels, by Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1835), ff. 16A-16B.

Here first is how those who have not yet been granted the vows of the bodhisattva may receive them. Begin by prostrating yourself in reverence to the Buddhas, and to their sons and daughters. Make offerings to them to the fullest of your ability. Then, for the sake of all living beings, make a fervent appeal to the one from whom you will take the vows: to your Lama, to one who is keeping these vows well, and who is a master of the scriptures of the bodhisattva way, and who has the ability to bring up his student. Take thus the vows upon yourself.

The following selections are taken from the Highway for Bodhisattvas.

खिरा...
विराम् पूर्वा, रि. से र. जर वाशियावाया विराक्ष्यात्र स्थान्य विराम पूर्वा, वि

Master Nagarjuna composed a text for a ceremony to formally raise the wish for enlightenment within one's mind, but did not compose any separate text for a ceremony to take on the vows. The following lines though do occur in his ritual for raising the wish:

Recite the following three times, in order to raise within your own mind the Wish for Enlightenment:

I swear to gain the ultimate
Wish for Buddhahood,
And take all living kind in my care;
I swear I will sweetly do
All those highest deeds
That Bodhisattvas do.
For the sake of all, let me be the Buddha.

11 Who Can Take the Bodhisattva Vows

"What kind of person," you may ask, "must you be to take the vows?" The bodhisattva can be either a layperson or someone who is ordained. They must feel a wish from the bottom of their hearts to practice the training for bodhisattvas that we have described above; that is, the three kinds of morality. They must also have raised up in their hearts the prayer of the wish for enlightenment—they must have made the prayer to achieve total Buddhahood in the proper way, following the instructions.

ાર્ક્સમાયાન સુદાન ર્જા કોન્યો કુદાન શ્રેષ્ઠા માર્ક્ષુત્ર પ્યાન ક્ષેત્ર પાતા સુધાન પાતા ક્ષેત્ર પાતા કોન્યો ક્ષેત્ર પાતા કોન્યો કોન્યો કો

One should not grant the vows to someone who is only taking the vows, but who has no interest in practicing the training for bodhisattvas; neither should one give these vows to someone who has not yet felt the wish in the form of a prayer in their hearts.

चर्ष्वर्यः स्ट्रीया चर्ष्य्यायः स्ट्रीया स्ट्रीय स्ट्री

If there is a person who does have the right intention to take the vows, there is something you should do then first before you grant them, for it will make their vows more firm. This is to inform the candidate thoroughly of the various points in which a bodhisattva must train himself or herself, and of the various mistakes they must avoid, as described in the great mother work within the body of bodhisattva literature: this very *Bodhisattva Levels*.

यर त्या तर विद्रा विद्

The reason for explaining all this to the candidate is so that he or she can look into his or her own heart and see whether or not they will be able to keep the vows; it is so they can analyze the situation intelligently, and then take the vows, and do so with joy. The point is not to somehow force the person into accepting the vows against their will. It is important as well that the person not see themselves as trying to keep up with what others are doing and take the vows for this reason. Understand that if you give the vows thus properly, and with the proper ritual, they will be strong; be certain to do everything with your eyes open.

तः सर्द्रा विश्वश्रात्तान्तर्थाः तर्वात्तर्थाः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त् यरः अक्षत्रः वश्यत्वेश्वात्तरः त्विश्वात्तरः त्वश्चेत्रः याः त्यश्चेत्रः याः त्यश्चेत्रः याः त्यश्चेत्रः याः व विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्तरः त्विश्वात्तरः त्विश्वात्तरः त्यश्चेत्रः याः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त

In this sense the bodhisattva vows are unlike the freedom vows; before you take them, you must go for teachings on them and understand them thoroughly. With this your intentions to keep the vows carefully will be strengthened, and then you are ready to take them. It is said that if you do have these intentions the vows will form within you as you take them, and that they will not form if you do not.

12 Who Can Give the Bodhisattva Vows

थुवानी मुन्दार दे। क्रिं सारा वेदार वेदा थुवा वार्ष स्वा नुर

य्यान्य विश्वासायका स्ट्रा वित्र क्षेत्र त्या यो त्या प्रत्या यो त्या त्या वित्र क्षेत्र त्या यो त्या वित्र क्षेत्र त्या वित्र वित्

Here secondly are the details of the person from who you receive the vows. "And what kind of person is it," you may ask, "from whom we must take the bodhisattva vows?" The person should be one who has made the bodhisattva prayer; that is, who has raised within himself the wish in the form of a prayer. He or she must also be someone who is "acting consistently," which means that they are keeping the vows of the bodhisattva well. They should be a master of the teachings of the greater way, and should be able to memorize the words of the ceremony and communicate them clearly in speech to the person taking the vows, and so on. Finally they must be able to hear and comprehend the responses of the candidate.

हिरद्रन्यकाश्चेत्र्यक्षश्चरणः वर्षेट्र्यक्षित्रश्चेश्चर्यक्षश्चर्यक्षश्चर्यक्षे प्रवास्त्रश्चेत्र्यक्षश्चर्यक्षित्र्यक्षश्चर्यक्षित्रय्वे । हिर्द्यक्षश्चर्यक्षित्रय्वे । इत्यास्त्रित्यक्षश्चर्यक्षित्रय्वे । हिर्द्यक्षित्रय्वे । हिर्द्यक्षश्चर्यक्षित्रयः हिर्द्यक्षित्रयः विद्यक्षित्रयः विद्यक्षित्यः विद्यक्षित्रयः विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित्रयः विद्यक्षित्रयः विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित् विद्यक्षित्यः विद्यक्षित् विद्यक

"What kind of person," one may continue, "should we *not* take our bodhisattva vows from?" Bodhisattvas should not accept the bodhisattva vows from just any bodhisattva that there is, even if they seem very learned; rather they should avoid those whose intentions or practice have degenerated. The person's intentions have degenerated if they have lost their faith, which means on a gross level that they no longer wish to keep the vows, and on a medium level that they no longer practice them, and on a more subtle level that they are no longer "thinking," which means making good efforts in their vows. The practice has degenerated when the person's attempts to follow the six perfections have failed.

13 The 18 Root Bodhisattva Vows

The following selection is taken from the String of Shining Jewels, by Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1835).

Ways for those who have received these vows to keep them, and prevent their decline

विद्रा विद्रापर स्वत्वेद निर्मेद्र निर्मेद्र

Next we describe ways for those who have received the bodhisattva vows to keep them, and prevent their decline. You must first submit yourself, in the proper way, to a holy spiritual guide, one who is learned in the scriptures of the bodhisattva way, and in the commentaries which explain the true intent of these scriptures. Then you must educate yourself in all the various bodhisattva precepts. You should especially learn the eighteen root downfalls, the forty-six secondary offenses, and so on.

क्षार्ट्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स स्ट्राम्स

The eighteen root downfalls

We begin then with the eighteen root downfalls:

क्केर्यान्यायक्ष्र्रियाकवाषात्रश्रम्यायक्ष्र्र्र्या वाल्यायक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्यायाक्ष्र्र्याया

(1) The root downfall of praising yourself, and criticizing others.

You commit this when, out of attachment to gain or honor, you praise yourself, and criticize others who in actuality possess good qualities. This can be divided into two separate root downfalls, those of praising oneself and of criticizing others.

(2) The root downfall of failing to give Dharma or material assistance

You commit this in a situation where you should be giving the Dharma that you know, or the material things that you own, to those who are suffering, to those who have no protector. Instead though you fail to give them these things, due to feelings of possessiveness. This can be divided into the two root downfalls of failing to give the Dharma and of failing to give material assistance.

(3) The root downfall of failing to accept someone's apology, and striking another

You commit this when someone comes to you in the appropriate manner and explains themselves in some way, such as asking your forgiveness or the like. Instead though you remain angry and commit various kinds of harm towards them physically or verbally. This can be divided into the two root downfalls of striking another and of not accepting a person's explanation of themselves.

(4) The root downfall of giving up the greater way, and teaching false dharma

You commit this when you give up the scriptures of the bodhisattva way, saying: "These were not spoken by the Buddha." Then you take pleasure in some false dharma yourself, and teach it to others as well. This can be divided into the two root downfalls of giving up the greater way and of teaching false dharma.

(5) The root downfall of stealing what belongs to the Jewels

You commit this in the following way. There is some material wealth or object which has been dedicated to the Three Jewels. Although you have no right to do so, you intentionally take the thing for yourself. You do so either by yourself or by having someone else do it for you, and by any of the various ways: thieving in stealth, robbing by force, or taking away through some clever means. The downfall is complete when you obtain the thing. This can be divided into three different root downfalls, one each for stealing what belongs to each one of the three different Jewels.

व्रयाः याश्रुः स्ट्रिंद् याश्रुः श्रूदः याश्रुः श्रुः स्ट्रिंदः याश्रुः श्रुः श्रूदः याश्रुः श्रुः स्ट्रिंदः य याश्रुदः श्राध्येतः त्रिंशः श्रूदः याश्रुः श्रुः स्ट्रिंदः याश्रुः श्रुः श्रूदः याः यदिः श्रः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः स्ट्रिः स्ट्रिः यदिः स्ट्रिः स्

(6) The root downfall of giving up the highest Dharma

You commit this when you discount the scriptural collections of the three ways, which present each and every aspect of the path, by saying "This is not the word of the Buddha." This can be divided into three different root downfalls, one each for giving up the respective scriptural collections of each of the three ways.

यद्भः श्रीयाः स्वाप्तायद्भः न्ता वर्ष्वः यद्भः स्वाप्तायद्भः स्वापत्यद्भः स्

(7) The root downfall of taking away the golden robes, and the rest, and removing someone from the status of an ordained person

You commit this when you take an ordained person, whether they be one who is maintaining their morality or not, and take away their golden robes, or beat them, or incarcerate them; or else remove them from the status of being ordained. This can be divided into the two root downfalls of taking away a person's golden robes or the rest, and of removing a person from the status of an ordained person.

स्ट्रिं स्ट्रिं प्राप्त स्ट्रिंट्रा योवियोश्रासायात्म श्रेश्रासायश्चराया नयोत्वर्ते स्ट्रिंग्येट्रे योटा स्ट्रिंग्ये स्ट्रिंग्ये स्ट्रिंग्येट्रे स्ट्रिंट्रा स्ट्रिंग्ये स्ट्रिंग्येट्रे स्ट्रेंग्येट्रे स्ट्रिंग्ये

(8) The root downfall of committing an immediate misdeed

You commit this when you commit any one or combination of the following: killing your father, killing your mother, killing an enemy destroyer, creating a schism in the Sangha, or drawing blood from One Thus Gone with evil intent. This can be divided into five separate root downfalls, corresponding to each of the five immediate misdeeds.

यर्ने त्यान्त्री क्रायह्म स्था क्रियायम् स्थाय वह्म स्था स्थाय स्थाप स्

(9) The root downfall of holding wrong views

You commit this when you hold to ideas such as "There is no relation between the deeds we commit and the consequences we experience," or "There are no past or future lives," or anything of the like.

स्रिंट्येष्ठी मूंट्येष्य्रायाद्येस्यस्य स्रिंद्येट्ये यहेय्याद्येस्य यहेय्याय्येस्य मूंट्येष्य्रेष्यायाद्येस्य स्रिंद्येष्ट्याय्येस्य स्रिंद्येष्य स्रिंद्ये

(10) The root downfall of destroying towns and such

You commit this when you destroy towns, or cities, or whole areas, or entire countries. This can be divided into the four different root downfalls of destroying towns, and then each of the rest.

म्रीश्रिम् सूर्वा प्रति सूर्वा सुर्वा स्थान सूर्वा स्थान स्

(11) The root downfall of teaching emptiness to a person who is not yet mentally prepared

You commit this with a person who has not yet reached a level where he or she can absorb the teachings on emptiness, and yet who has been able to develop the wish to achieve total enlightenment. The downfall is completed when, as a result of your teaching them emptiness, they become frightened—in such a way that they turn back from their wish to achieve full enlightenment, and develop instead a wish to achieve the goals of the lower way.

(12) The root downfall of causing a person to turn back from total enlightenment

Committing this begins when you say the following to a person who has already developed the wish to achieve total enlightenment:

You will never be able to carry out the six perfections, and actually reach Buddhahood. If you strive instead for the goals of the listeners and self-made Buddhas, then you will manage to liberate yourself from the circle of suffering life."

When because of your talking this way the person turns back from his or her wish to achieve full enlightenment, the downfall is complete.

म्रिम्नात्मक्ष्यात्मक्षयात्मक्

(13) The root downfall of causing a person to give up the morality of freedom

You commit this with a person who is keeping properly the morality of individual freedom. You say to him or her, "What's the use of keeping the morality of freedom pure? You should rather develop the wish to achieve full enlightenment—you should come over to the greater way." And then you say, "If you do so, you'll be able to stop each and every bad deed committed through any of the three doors of expression."

When because of your talking this way the person turns away from the morality of individual freedom, the root downfall is completed.

(14) The root downfall of holding that a person cannot eliminate desire and the rest by following the way of the learner

You commit this when you hold that the realizations of listeners and self-made Buddhas could never liberate a person from the circle of suffering life: you discount the lesser way, saying "Regardless of how much a person might train himself in the ways of the listeners and the self-made Buddhas, he could never thereby eliminate the mental afflictions in their entirety."

स्त्रीयात्राच्यार याद्यार याद्यार याद्या क्षेत्र याद्य क्षेत्र याद्या क्षेत्य याद्या क्षेत्र या

The root downfall of criticizing someone else due to one's desire for the adulation of others

With this root downfall you are reciting teachings of the greater way, or reading them, presenting them to others, or anything of the like, all out of an attachment to material gain or the respect of others. At the same time though you claim, "I am a practitioner of the greater way who has no concern for material gain, the respect of others, or any such thing. That other person though is not this way at all." The downfall is complete when you have expressed the praise on one hand, and the criticism on the other.

It is stated that, since this root downfall is subsumed by the first downfall—that of praising oneself and criticizing others—it should not be counted as a separate downfall.

यदः सःस्ट्रिंट् १२ स्वर्त्त स्वर्णः स्वरंणः स

(15) The root downfall of professing the complete opposite

You commit this as follows. In actuality, you have yet to perceive emptiness directly. Nonetheless you teach the subject of emptiness to others and say, "Meditate as I have taught you, and you will come to see emptiness; then you'll be just like me." The downfall is completed as soon as the other person grasps the meaning of your words.

(16) The root downfall of accepting what belongs to the Jewels when someone presents it to you

Suppose a king and his minister or any such official is exacting some punishment, and has taken an object that belongs to the Jewels, or to the Sangha, or to an individual monk. And suppose that they offer it to you. You commit this downfall when you accept the thing, and come into possession of it.

यान्तः विद्यायम् यात्रः यहेताः प्रदेशः मुद्दः याः याः मुद्दः याः याः मुद्दः याः याः याः याः याः याः याः याः य द्याः योः विद्याः याद्वः य विद्याय्वः याद्वः य

(17) The root downfall of rejecting the practice of quietude, and giving the possessions of meditators to those whose practice is recitation

You commit this as follows. Out of feelings of dislike for them, you take away the possessions of meditators who are average people engaged in balanced meditation on quietude. Then you give these possessions to persons whose practice is recitation.

नुरःकुनःग्रुःशेअशःगिर्हरःष। नुरःकुनःशेअशःवर्देरःग्रुःसःसूरः१८।

(18) The root downfall of discarding the wish for enlightenment

You commit this if you ever give up the wish for enlightenment.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Four: The Vows of the Bodhisattva, Part Two

The first selections are taken from the String of Shining Jewels, by Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (early 19th Century), a tutor of His Holiness the Tenth Dalai Lama.

What Makes Something a Root Downfall of the Bodhisattva Vows

गुन-२ग्रोब-४८-१ सन्धुट-२ग्राय-व्यापान्यः चावहेन-पवे सन्धुट-वाहेब-क्री-चावः सन्धुट-वि-देश्-देश्-देश्-वि-।

In the case of two of the root downfalls—that is, with this last one and also with the ninth, where you hold to wrong views—it is not necessary for all four of the "binding" mental afflictions or "chains" to be present in order for a root downfall to occur.

With the other sixteen root downfalls though there must be what we call a "major" instance of the chains. For an instance of the chains to be "major," all four must be present. These four chains are as follows:

- (1) A desire to commit still more of the particular wrong deed;
- (2) A lack of any shame or consideration;

- (3) A sense of enjoyment, and satisfaction; as well as
- (4) Failing to consider one's deed as something wrong.

If one possesses the fourth mental affliction, and on top of it the first three as well, then this is a "major" instance of the chains. There are other cases where one possesses the fourth affliction and in addition to it only two of the first three, or else only one of these three, or perhaps no more than the fourth on its own. All these cases are said to represent a "medium" impurity. The first three are said to be a "lesser" impurity.

क्षेत्रःचित्रःक्ष्री वच्चैदःचीत्रःचक्षुत्रःचवेत्रःचित

A person can be engaged in a basic form of one of the sixteen root downfalls and yet, should the requirement of a "major" instance of the chains not be filled, he or she is only committing a kind of downfall subsumed by a lesser or medium level of impurity. Such a person then would only be performing a secondary offense categorized in the collection of root downfalls.

15 How to Restore the Bodhisattva Vows

युःयः र्श्वेश्वः यञ्चरः पर्वेशः विदः। युःयः र्श्वेश्वः यञ्चरः पर्वेशः विदः।

This brings us to the third part in our presentation on the vows of the bodhisattva, which concerns how to restore them, should they happen to decline. Any time you commit one of the root downfalls and a "major" instance of the chains has occurred, or else when something happens like giving up the prayer for the wish for enlightenment or developing wrong views, you must take the vows over again.

यवयात्रात्तरम् विक्राम् केत्राम् केत्राम् विक्राम्य विक्राम व

Whenever you commit offenses that involve a medium level of impurity, you should confess them before a group of three or more persons. Whenever you commit offenses involving a lesser level of impurity, or else any of the forty-six secondary offenses or anything of the like, then you should confess them before a single person.

Any time you commit any other offenses, the best thing you can do is to confess it before a single person, and so on. If you can't do that, then you should confess before an altar with representations of the body, speech, and mind of the Buddha, with a strong feeling that you are performing your confession in the presence of the victorious Buddhas, along with their bodhisattva sons and daughters.

य व्यास स्वास स स्वास स

You should also confess and purify yourself through the practices of going for refuge and praying to develop the wish for enlightenment, performing a confession of downfalls, a general confession, meditation and recitation on the practice of the Warrior of Diamond, and so on.

यवयात्रात्ताः रम्बार्यात्रात्ताः रम्बार्यात्रात्ताः

Whenever you perform any of the confessions mentioned throughout here you must do so with all four of the antidote forces complete. . .

16 What Happens if You Break a Root Bodhisattva Vow

The following selections are taken from the Highway for Bodhisattvas, by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419):

We may summarize these points as follows. If a person commits even one of the "defeats" [root downfalls], it is impossible for him or her to attain the first bodhisattva level within the same life. One also loses the spiritual fortune to see the close cause of this attainment, the great collection of virtue necessary to reach the first bodhisattva level, increase in its power (for whatever amount one has already collected) or occur in the first place (for whatever amount one has yet to collect). I need not mention then what happens when you commit these defeats over and over again.

देवः श्वेरः समाया चुदः स्थार्या स्थारा श्वेषा पर्देश चुदे। परः सः श्वेरः योगाया द्वेदः स्थारा चुदः स्थारा श्वेषा पर्देश चुदे।

Therefore you must never think to yourself: "Well, even if I did commit one of the defeats, it doesn't matter, I could take my bodhisattva vows over again." Rather you must, at the cost of your very life, avoid ever being defiled by a root downfall of the vows.

याच्यात्र देवे तुषायावर्षाताचे दाक्षेत्र याक्ष्य याक्ष्य क्षेत्र याक्ष्य व्याच्यात्र क्षेत्र याक्ष्य विवाद विवाद

Again we can summarize as follows. Suppose you commit a root downfall, but from the point just after you do so, and on, you do not lose your wish for enlightenment in the form of a prayer. The power of this kind of wish then

prevents the fact that you have committed a root downfall from acting as a block that would stop the vows from ever growing again in you. If you lack this kind of wish though there would be nothing to block the power of the root downfall, and this would make your vows something that you could not restore. This is the point of the quotation.

17 Giving Up Your Bodhisattva Vows

भक्षत्र पुष्ण म्यूप्रण पर्वे प्रमान विषय प्रमान विषय

Concerning this point, suppose someone gives back his or her bodhisattva vows. He or she has first agreed to accomplish the help and happiness of an infinite number of living beings, and then stopped keeping their vows altogether. As a result they will fall to the lower births, and then be forced to wander there for a very long time; for if one must pass to the lower realms for destroying the happiness of even a single living creature, what need is there to mention what happens when you destroy the happiness of a limitless number of beings? For this and many other reasons is the point above proven.

मुं अर्ठव दे दे अर्था वे र्श्वेव श्रे अर्थ या प्रत्य प्रत

The above reasons all relate to a case where one gives up the wish for enlightenment in the form of a prayer; and even if one were not to give it up, yet still gave up the great pledge of taking on oneself the deeds of a

bodhisattva, it would be nearly the same thing. Therefore it is totally wrong to give back one's vows. Thus too one should consider everything very carefully before one even takes on the vows, for it is very grave if one goes wrong.

18 The Forty-Six Secondary Vows of the Bodhisattva

This entire selection is taken from the String of Shining Jewels:

म्वितात्वर्भात्व न्यात्वर्भात्व न्यात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भाव्य स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भाव स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भाव स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भाव स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्वर्भात्व स्थात्य स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्वर्भात्व स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्य स्यात्वर्भात्व स्थात्य स्था

Here next we will explain the forty-six different secondary offenses against the vows of a bodhisattva.

(1) The secondary offense of failing to make offering to the Jewels through the three doors of expression

You commit this when a single period of 24 hours passes, and you have not yet made offering to any one or combination of the Three Jewels by means of the three doors of expression; that is, through bowing down with your body, and praising with your words, and admiring with your thoughts.

रट.क्षेट्र.वर्र्ट्र.त.कु.च.कुच्.श्र.वेश.त.चश्चेश.चग्चेर.वा.कच्याश.त.क्ष्याश.वर्ष्यातर. श्र.चेट्र.वा वर्र्ट्र.त.कु.च.कुच्.श्र.वेश.त.चश्चेश.चग्चेर.वा.कच्याश.व.कुंया.वा.वर्ष्यायर.

(2) The secondary offense of allowing thoughts of desire to go on

You commit this when you fail to try to stop a thought that comes up in yourself such as an inordinate desire for an object, or not being satisfied with what you have, an attachment to having others pay you honor, or anything of the like.

(3) The secondary offense of failing to pay respect to one's elders

You commit this with a person who is your elder in the sense of having taken the precepts of the bodhisattva before you, and who has good qualities, and is worthy of your honor. The offense is done when you fail to pay them respect by honoring them in some way, or the like.

यव्या यो:योदी:प्रमान्यां क्ष्यां त्याः विद्याः यो विद्

(4) The secondary offense of failing to answer questions

You commit this when out of anger or laziness you fail to give an appropriate answer to a person who has asked you a question in a sincere and well-meaning way.

(5) The secondary offense of failing to accept an invitation

You commit this when someone invites you to partake of a meal, accept some article of clothing, or anything of the like, but out of pride, or a wish to hurt them, anger, or laziness, you refuse to come.

च्चित्रः । विद्याम्योश्यान्त्रेयः प्रत्यान्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः व्यान्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्रेयः स्त्र स्त्रेयः स्

(6) The secondary offense of failing to accept gold or the like

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt them, or out of anger or laziness, you refuse to accept gold or silver or any other kind of material wealth that a sponsor has tried to offer to you.

याः व्युद्धः देयदः योशः क्रूशः श्रेष्ठेशः या क्रूशः वर्द्द्दः याः याः क्रूशः श्रेष्ठः याः व्युशः व्युशः याः व

(7) The secondary offense of failing to give the Dharma to those who wish it

You commit this when—out of a desire to hurt them, or out of anger or envy or laziness—you fail to give the Dharma to those who wish it.

केश. चुरा पत्र में पर दे दियो पर केश सूर ग्री स्ट्री र पर के असूर सिंवा श से

The seven secondary offenses just listed all work against the practice of giving for collecting goodness.

(8) The secondary offense of rejecting persons with sullied morality

Suppose you encounter persons with sullied morality: those who have committed one of the immediate misdeeds, or one of the root downfalls. You commit this offense when, because of what they have done, and with feelings of wanting to hurt them, or out of anger or laziness, you reject and ignore them completely.

यर.शु.यश्चेत.थे। स.र्.ज.२२.ब्रै२.श्चेंय.तर.शु.युंटे.तदु.क्षेत्र.येत्रावरायदे. यवित्र.युं.शुत्रात्रत्येत.यदु.तुंर.श्चेंय.तर.श्चेंच.त.स्त्रात्रत्येत्र.यंत्रात्र्यः

(9) The secondary offense of failing to follow the rules, which leads other persons to develop faith

You commit this when you fail to follow the rules of the teachings on discipline, just as though you were someone who belonged to the tradition of the listeners, for this is something that protects the minds of others.

सूंचार्य। श्रेश्रश्चर्यस्य विवान्तर्यस्य स्त्रियः स्तिः स्त्रियः स्त्रियः

(10) The secondary offense of performing deeds which are only of lesser benefit for all living beings

A bodhisattva need not necessarily observe certain kinds of proscribed morality from the teachings on discipline in the same way that a person of the listener tradition would. An example would be the downfalls which are exclusively proscribed, such as the one in the "abandonment" group, where a monk has kept cloth for over ten days. If it is not incumbent on you to do so and yet still you observe this vow in exactly the same way that someone of the listener tradition would, then you have committed this offense.

चल्नेत्र-त्राध्याक्ष्यात्राक्ष्यात्र क्ष्रिट-चक्कि-त्रक्ष्यायाः क्ष्रिट-चक्कि-त्रक्ष्यायाः क्ष्रिट-चक्कि-त्रक्षयाः विकान्त्र क्ष्रियाः विकान्त्र विकान्त्र

(11) The secondary offense of failing to break a rule out of compassion

There are certain extraordinary situations where specific misdeeds—the seven of taking life and the rest—are allowed for a person who possesses the wish for enlightenment, and who is practicing the precepts of the bodhisattva in the proper way. If you are this kind of person and it would be of extraordinary benefit to others if you did commit such a deed, then you have committed this offense when you fail to do so.

या तक्ष्यात्वास्त्रम् वार्षियाः स्ति विद्याः स्ति विद्या

(12) The secondary offense of taking up wrong livelihood

You commit this when you take up any one or combination of the five kinds of wrong livelihood, and fail to take some corrective measure. These five are

trying to obtain things through pretending, flattering, hinting, forcing, or baiting.

याबुयाः पर वर्ते नः वा वकर वकार या प्राप्त या याववर वा व्याप्त व्यापत व्याप्त व्याप्त व्यापत व

(13) The secondary offense of forgetting yourself and acting wild

You commit this when you forget yourself and act wild, distracting yourself with fun and games or chattering on in a silly way. You also do so if you try to get others to act wild and so on.

चित्राक्ष्याः सम्बद्धाः सम्बद्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्यः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्यः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्

(14) The secondary offense of thinking that you only have to travel through the circle of suffering life

You commit this when you think to yourself, and also say to others, the following: "Bodhisattvas don't like to reach nirvana; in fact, they work for the opposite. They have no fear of the mental afflictions, and they do not try to keep their minds totally away from these thoughts. They only want to achieve Buddhahood, and they wander around in the circle of suffering life for three 'countless' eons."

यात्रभाष्ट्रेत्राचिः विक्षान्त्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव यात्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रव्यात्रभाष्ट्रव्याद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रवयाद्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्यवयाद्रभाष्ट्रभाष्याद्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट्रभाष्ट

(15) The secondary offense of failing to put a stop to rumors about yourself

Suppose you have said or done something that has led to some vile rumors or slanderous talk which might cause people to doubt the veracity or purity of what you say. You commit this offense when you fail to take steps to clarify the situation and stop the rumors.

(16) The secondary offense of failing to correct someone when it must be done in a negative way

Suppose another person is committing bad deeds in their actions or speech, and you realize that if you took some very forceful action towards them you would be able to set them straight. You commit this offense when, for no more reason than to have them maintain their good opinion of you, you fail then to take this step.

ম্বিশ্বন্ধির্মর্য বেরুরে বিশ্বর্মর প্রমান্তর্ম বর্ত্বর প্রমান্তর্ম বর্ত্বর প্রমান্তর্ম বর্ত্বর প্রমান্তর্ম বর্ত্বর প্রমান্তর প্রমান্তর

These nine secondary offenses, from the offense of rejecting those with sullied morality down to this last one, work against the practice of morality.

We return next to the String of Shining Jewels:

|याल्य-ग्री-र--त्य-यानि-य। म्लि-या यहेगा-या अर्क्ट-त्यु-या अ्याका-यले-त्य-हे-

(17) The secondary offense of losing the four points of the practice of virtue

Suppose another person has done any of these four, or something similar, to you: scolded you, gotten angry at you, beaten you, or criticized you. You commit this offense when you respond to them with the same.

चुर्य। ब्रिंशन्तर्भश्रात्तर्भश्या चाव्यः चुर्यः चुर्यः द्वाश्राद्यार्थः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्व श्री स्वार्याव्यः त्राः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार चुर्यः विश्वार्याव्ययः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्

(18) The secondary offense of simply ignoring those who are angry

Suppose you have done something wrong towards another person, or even that this person just believes you have done so. You commit this offense if, out of a desire to hurt them, or pride, or laziness, you fail to explain yourself to them in an appropriate manner.

यद्भा यार्च्याः वृत्राः मुक्षायः मुक्षायः स्थाः स्थाः

(19) The secondary offense of refusing to forgive another person when they apologize for doing something wrong to you

Suppose another person has done something wrong to you, and they come to you in an appropriate way to explain themselves. If out of a desire to hurt them, or thoughts of malice, or simply because you don't feel like it you refuse to accept this apology, then you have committed the offense.

म्बिरायदी:स्रोधराय्यायाः मुद्दात्वायदी:स्रोधराय्याः स्रोधरायः स्रोधर्यः स्रोधरायः स्रोधरायः स्रोधरायः स्रोधरायः स्रोधरायः स्रोधरायः स्र

(20) The secondary offense of allowing thoughts of anger to go on

You commit this when you start to feel anger towards someone, and then continue to hold this anger, and willingly let it go on, because you see nothing wrong with it.

वर्'प्यत् मुं केश नुषा निवे दे निर्मे प्यते हो साम्रम्

The four secondary offenses just listed all work against the practice of patience.

वित्र म्याप्त में प्रति । स्वर्थ । प्रति । प्

(21) The secondary offense of collecting a group of disciples out of a desire to have others pay honor to you

You commit this when you collect a group of disciples in hopes of having people pay honor to you, or serve you, or make material offerings to you.

क्रेंश्रयायश्चर्या यो:येंद्रि: प्राप्त क्रियाय क्र

(22) The secondary offense of failing to dispel your laziness and the like

This offense refers first of all to the entire day, and to the first and final periods of the night: all but the middle part. Suppose that during this time you quite willingly give yourself up to the pleasant feeling of sleep; or to the pleasure of laying down, staying in bed, or anything of the like. And you do so because of sloth, out of laziness. When you act this way and fail to dispel these tendencies, then you've committed the offense.

ग्रीकार्ट्यात्त्रेयात्र्यात्रात्त्रेरास्त्रेयाकात्त्रीत्रात्त्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्त्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्यात्रेयात्र भिकार्ट्यात्त्रेयात्र्यात्रात्त्रात्त्रेयात्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्यात्रेयात्रात्यात्र

(23) The secondary offense of spending time with busy talk because you enjoy it

You commit this offense when you just pass the time in a lot of busy talk that you are all wrapped up in, discussing politics or crimes or the opposite sex or whatever.

वर्'प्यत्रकेषान्य्र्याम्युमान्ने वर्सेत् वर्त्युमान्त्री मे सञ्ज्ञ स्र्विम्यान्त्री

The three secondary offenses just listed all work against the practice of effort.

प्रस्थान्त्रेश्वरायम् प्रहेषायायम् पर्देन् प्रास्यम् स्थित्रा स्थित्र प्रस्थान्त्र स्थित्र प्रस्थान्त्र स्थित् स्या स्थित् स्या स्थित् स

(24) The secondary offense of failing to seek the meaning of meditative concentration

You commit this offense when, despite the fact that you want to learn how to put your mind into balanced meditation, you fail to go to a person who could impart to you the necessary instructions for developing concentration, and you do so out of a desire to hurt someone, or laziness.

(25) The secondary offense of failing to purge yourself of the obstacles to meditation

Suppose you have any one or combination of the five typical obstacles to meditation: the pair of restless desire and missing something or someone; feelings of malice about someone; the pair of drowsiness and mental dullness; attraction to the objects of the senses; and unresolved doubts. You commit this offense when you allow yourself these five, and fail to act to dispel them.

বষমানাদ্র শ্রীনের নাথা শ্রীর স্তির কিন্তুর নাথার দর্শন্ত শ্রের দর ক্রিয়া নামমানাদ্র কিন্তুর প্র

(26) The secondary offense of considering the pleasant sensation of meditation to be an important personal attainment

You commit this when you start to develop a craving for the pleasant feeling you get during meditation, and begin to consider the experience of this sensation to be an important personal attainment.

वर्'प्यम् मी केश नुष्या मार्थु सार्वे प्रमास मार्ग्न मी से सह्य में मार्थे ।

The three secondary offenses just listed all work against the practice of meditation.

ह्या. ह्या. त्रा. त्रीत् . त्रेत्र . त्र त्र्या त्रा . त्रेत्र . त्रेत् । १४४ . ह्या . त्रेत्र . त्रेत

(27) The secondary offense of rejecting the way of the listeners

You commit this when you entertain and express to others the opinion that "Those who belong to the lesser way must learn the scriptural collection of the listeners, grasp its meaning and memorize its words, train themselves in it and so on. This is not however necessary for bodhisattvas."

चिराश्रम् भी केंद्रिया पर्से के प्रमान केंद्रिया केंद्र

(28) The secondary offense of making efforts in the other system, when our own is available

You commit this in an instance where you do have available to you an opportunity to exert yourself in the scriptural collection of the bodhisattvas, and yet you discard this opportunity, and make efforts instead with the scriptural collection of the listeners.

क्ष्यानुष्य १८०१ यसूत्र पर्वेषाया पर्देष प्यापाने वास्त्र प्याप्त स्वाप्त पर्वेष प्याप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

(29) The secondary offense of making efforts in non-Buddhist texts where no efforts should be made

You commit this in an instance where you do have available to you an opportunity to exert yourself in the word of the Buddhas, and make efforts instead with non-Buddhist texts.

र्यायः पर्यः क्षेत्रः चुत्रः युव्यः व्यायः विदः युव्यः यु

(30) The secondary offense of being attracted, even in a case where one must make efforts

Suppose even that there is case where there is some compelling need for you to make efforts in non-Buddhist texts. You commit this offense when you engage in this study with feelings of attraction for it throughout the process: at the beginning, during the interim, and in the end.

चित्र ३०। वचित्र १ वेश भ्रीत्र ताय देवश ताय देवा भ्रम् विश्वा विश्व विष

(31) The secondary offense of rejecting the greater way

You commit this when you say the following words, and thereby discount any particular part of the scriptural collection of the bodhisattvas: "This part is not as good," or "The composition at this point is inferior," or "The author of this part was not the best," or "This part won't contribute to the welfare of living beings."

इंदि.ग्री.क्षेत्राचित्राचर्यातायकूर्यः श्रुटःयविषः ताः क्षेत्रःय। यर्याः यकूरः यविषः

(32) The secondary offense of praising oneself and criticizing others

You commit this when, out of pride or anger, you praise yourself and criticize others.

यास्री वर्षे क्षा मुंद्रित प्रत्यो स्वर्षे वर्षे स्वर्षे वर्षे स्वर्षे स्वरं स्वर्षे स्वर्षे स्वरं स्वर्षे स्वर्षे स्वरं स्वरं

(33) The secondary offense of not going to hear the Dharma

You commit this when, out of pride or laziness, you fail to attend a teaching where someone is explaining the Dharma, or a discussion about the Dharma, or something of the like.

रदःयाः क्रेंशः श्चाः प्रति । व्याः प्रश्नेंद्रायाः याः विद्याः विद्य

(34) The secondary offense of focussing on the vessel and the letters

You commit this when you fail to think of the person giving you the Dharma as the Teacher himself, and pay him or her the proper respect, and so on. Rather you dismiss them completely, or criticize them behind their backs, and focus on whether the way they express themselves is beautiful or not, instead of focussing on the meaning.

বरे'स्मम'र्ने'नेम'र्न्यक्ष्यमुर्ने'नेभ'र्नेभ'र

The eight secondary offenses just listed all work against the practice of wisdom; and thus the thirty-four up to here represent offenses that work against the six perfections for collecting goodness.

The next reading again is taken from the String of Shining Jewels:

स्ट्रार्श्वेर्यत्येर्या येत्रप्रया नियातः स्र्री वर्श्वर्यस्या स्रेर्या स्रियास्य वर्श्वर्या स्रियास्य वर्श्वर

या निर्माश्चर्यायात्रात्त्रीयात्रात्त्रीं त्राच्यात्रात्त्रीं विद्यात्रात्ये के स्वात्त्रात्त्रीं व्याप्त्रीं व्याप्ति व्यापति व्याप्ति व्यापति वयापति व्यापति व्य

(35) The secondary offense of failing to assist someone in need

Suppose a circumstance arises where it would be appropriate for you to assist someone. We could list eight different kinds of people who might need help:

- 1) Someone who is just undertaking a particular task;
- 2) Someone who is trying to get somewhere;
- 3) Someone who is trying to learn a language;
- 4) Someone who is trying to learn a skill (as long as it is not something harmful);
- 5) Someone who is trying to protect their belongings;
- 6) Someone who is trying to fix a split between people;
- 7) Someone who is planning a virtuous event of some kind;
- 8) Someone who is undertaking some more general virtue.

You commit this offense if, out of anger or laziness, you fail to assist such persons.

वर्षायाः रेशा में प्रत्यक्षेत्रं प्रणुरः स्वीत् प्रणुरः स्वीत् स्वात् स

(36) The secondary offense of failing to serve the sick

Suppose a situation arises where it would be appropriate for you to serve and attend to the sick. You commit this offense if, out of anger or laziness, you fail to do so.

जिंदाना द्रमा लय.लया.स्रेन.ता लम.ग्रीम.टल.चा स्रीच.त.र्जु.र्जेया

चित्राक्ष्णा चर्त्राचा वार्ष्ट्रश्रम्थाःश्रेच्युम्याः स्वान्याः स्वायः स्वान्याः स्वान्याः स्वान्याः स्वान्याः स्वान्याः स्वान्याः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्व

(37) The secondary offense of failing to remove suffering

Suppose a person is suffering due to any one or combination of the following seven problems: they are blind, deaf, handicapped, weary from travelling, tormented by any of the five mental obstacles, haunted by thoughts such as malice towards someone, or suffering from defeat at the hands of someone else. You commit this offense if, out of anger or laziness, you fail to make some attempt remove the suffering they are undergoing due to the problem they have.

ययाः सेट्रास्त्रः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायाः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स्व

(38) The secondary offense of failing to give good reasons to those who are acting in a dangerous way

Suppose someone is acting in a way that is going to be detrimental to their interests in either this or the future life. You commit this offense when, out of anger or laziness, you fail to give them reasons that are clearly logical and also fitting for them, to show why they should stop.

(39) The secondary offense of failing to repay someone who has helped you, by helping them back

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to return a kindness done for you.

यम् भ्रातित्याः स्त्रीत् । प्रात्याः स्त्रीत् । प्रात्याः स्त्रीयः स्त्राः स्

(40) The secondary offense of failing to dispel another person's grief

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to dispel the grief a person is feeling who has lost someone or something dear to them.

चर्त्राक्ष्म् अर्थेयात्राक्ष्मेंद्राचार्यात्यात्रव्य रहेत्राच्यात्रात्यात्र विश्वाच्यात्र विश्वाच्याच्यात्र विश्वाच्यात्र विश्वाच्यात्र विश्वाच्यात्र विश्वाच्यात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचय विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचय विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचय विश्वाचय विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचय विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्य विश्वाचय विश्वाचय विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वाचयात्र विश्वा

(41) The secondary offense of failing to give money or other material things to someone who wants them

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to give food and drink or anything of the like to a person who is asking you for them.

वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः अध्यक्षः श्रेष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वरः वर्षः वर्षः वरः वर्षः वर्षः वरः वर्षः वरः वरः वरः वर्षः वर्षः वरः वरः

(42) The secondary offense of failing to fill the needs of your circle of disciples

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to grant spiritual advices to your circle of disciples, or when you fail on their behalf to seek out, in the proper way, the things which they need, from householders with faith and the means to help.

(43) The secondary offense of failing to get along with someone

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to get along with another person.

(44) The secondary offense of failing to praise someone's good qualities

You commit this when, out of a desire to hurt someone or out of laziness, you fail to praise another person's good qualities, or else fail to tell them how good something they said was.

स्रम्भारा स्रम्भार प्रत्या स्थान स्यान स्थान स

(45) The secondary offense of failing to cut someone off when the time has come to do so

Suppose a problem has reached a point where the proper thing to do is to chastise someone, or punish them, or even expel them. You commit this offense when, out of mental afflictions or laziness, you fail to do whichever is necessary.

त्रीयायक्रीयोकायाःश्योकाःश्राद्वीदात्राद्धाःश्रेकाःचिका लहा त्रीयायाः क्रिंशाताः दर्गात्राद्धीयायाः दर्गात्राद्धीयायाः क्रीयायाः अयाः प्राप्ताः अयाः प्राप्ताः अयाः प्राप्ताः अयाः प्राप्ताः विद्याः विद्या

(46) The secondary offense of failing to use your supernormal powers to threaten someone or such when needed

Suppose you do possess various magical powers, and a situation has arisen where it would be the right time to use them to frighten a person, or inspire them, or prevent someone without vows from trying to make use of offerings that have been made [to the Sangha] in true faith, or anything of the like. If in such a case you fail to use your powers to frighten the person, or inspire them, or to prevent someone without vows from trying to make use of offerings that have been made in true faith, or anything of the like, then you commit this offense.

The twelve secondary offenses just listed all work against the morality which acts for the benefit of all living beings.

19 The Secondary Offenses Against the Wish for Enlightenment

The following are the secondary offenses against the precepts of the prayer for the wish for enlightenment:

Here we will list additional offenses, which are committed against the precepts of the prayer for the wish for enlightenment. One would be failing to support those whom it would be proper to support, either with Dharma or with material things. Another would be failing to let go of your anger about something someone else had done to hurt you, or else discriminating between people, in the sense of liking some and disliking others.

There is also failing to take yourself to a holy lama, and giving up the practices of learning and contemplation upon what you have learned. Another is failing to have helping others in mind as you partake of food or clothing or any other thing you make use of. A final example would be to engage in any virtuous activity without having in mind the wish to reach enlightenment for the sake of all living beings. All these are spoken to be secondary offenses against the prayer.

The four black deeds, and the four white deeds

There are certain causes that will, further, prevent you from losing the wish for enlightenment in your other lives. For these you will have to give up the four black deeds, and then take up the four white deeds. Here is how to do so.

द्याः क्रेंश्चर्याः द्वाः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्व स्वार्थः स्वार्यः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स

The first black deed is to intentionally deceive your Lama, or those to whom we make offerings, or any such person, by lying to them. The antidote for doing this is the first of the white deeds, which is never intentionally speaking a lie, even if only in jest, to any single living being there is.

त्रवाःसःयाक्षेत्रःयाव्यक्षिःयाः स्वात्रःयद्वः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स विद्यतः स्वातः स्वातः स्वात्यत्वः सः स्वातः स्व स्वाः स्वातः स्वातः स्वात्यः स्वातः स्व

The second black deed is to cause another person to regret some virtuous thing they have done. The antidote for doing this is the fourth white deed, which is to bring a person that you are cultivating to strive for total enlightenment, rather than bringing them to the path of the lower way.

या क्रियाम्ब्रुस्याम्ब्रुस्याम्ब्रुस्याम्बर्धस्य स्थान्त्रेत्याम्बर्धस्य स्थान्त्रेत्यान्त्रेत्यान्त्रेत्यान्त्रेत्याः स्थान्त्रेत्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्रेत्यान्त्रेत्यान्यान्त्यान्यान्यान्त्यान्यान्त्यान्त्यान्यान्त्यान्यान्यान्त्यान्

The third black deed is to say something unpleasant to a bodhisattva out of anger. The antidote for doing this is the third white deed, which is to try to conceive of every sentient being as the Teacher himself, and to see all beings and things as totally pure.

चर्य। वर्षा वर्षा

The fourth black deed is to act in a devious way with any living being, without any sense of personal responsibility for their enlightenment. The antidote for doing this is the second white deed, where you maintain an attitude of total honesty towards every living being, free of any kind of deception.

20 How to Keep Your Bodhisattva Vows

The following selections again are taken from the Highway for Bodhisattvas:

Here secondly are instructions for protecting your mind from these offenses. Let us first say a word about all the details we have given thus far about the rules that bodhisattvas must follow. There is not one of them which is not taken directly from the sutras themselves; everything from the explanation of the three types of morality on up can be found scattered throughout a variety of sources spoken by the Teacher in the collection of sutras. These scattered references were then explicated, in their entirety, by the realized being Asanga, as he brought them into a single work, and a single lineage, here in the great grandfather of all the books in the scriptural collection for bodhisattvas.

Since this code of life is such, since it is anything but something that someone just made up, bodhisattvas should develop a sense of respect for it, and follow its rules. This respect should lead them on to three excellent intentions, which bring them to take the vows from another person, and then develop—from the very depths of their hearts—a regard for the code that treats it as the highest of all objects. Finally then they must keep to the code, never violating the rules they have been given.

चिर्यक्ष्यःयःम्बुस्राद्धे। देःद्याःयःस्र्रेयःयरःवर्देदःयवेःयस्रस्यः स्रायरःद्याःयःदरः चिर्यक्षयःयःम्बुस्रस्रे। देःद्याःयःस्र्येसस्यः वर्देदःयवेःयस्रसःयः स्रायरः द्याःयःदरः

The three excellent intentions are as follows:

- * the pure intention where you wish to follow the rules;
- * the intention where you wish to reach enlightenment; and
- * the intention of working for the benefit of every living being.

21 How Some Vows are Broken More Seriously than Others

यःकुर:दुःर्द्धेदःश्चेरःयाःदिवै:चःदैःग्वैदःयःयशःदैःशःविश्वःयःद्वःयाःश्चेदःग्वैश्वःयः शृःयःसूरःचःकेर्द्धःश्चेरःयाःदिवै:चःदैःग्वैदःयःयशःदैःशःविश्वःयःद्वशःयःकेदःग्वेशःवृश्वः

The fifth part of our discussion concerns the division of the downfalls into those which are more serious, and those which are less. As for the instigation, those downfalls committed through ignorance of the vows or through carelessness are the least serious. Those committed through an attack of mental afflictions are moderately serious. And those committed through a lack of respect for the vows are the most serious of all.

यद्येट.कुर.सूज्। विश्वत्रात्तात्वाञ्ची रैयो.योश्वेत्राक्षेट.यच्चेट.कु.योश्वेत्राच्चीत्रात्तास्त्रात्राक्ष्याः

As for a person's state of mind, those downfalls committed through the three mental poisons [of liking, disliking, or ignorance] in either lesser, medium, or greater strength are—respectively—serious to a lesser, or medium, or greater degree.

स्वित्त्वेत्त्रस्य विष्यात्रस्य स्वाप्त्रस्य स्वाप्त्रस्

As for the object of the deed, there can also be cases where the downfall is serious to a lesser, or medium, or greater degree even if it is committed in the same state of mind towards different objects which share a common quality. Suppose for example that an [ordained] person overwhelmed by the same mental "chain," the same kind of dislike, kills any one of the following:

- (1) an animal;
- (2) a human or human fetus who is not their father or mother; or else
- (3) a human who is their father or mother.

In the first case, you commit the kind of deed known as a "fall." In the second, you commit a full defeat which is not one of the immediate misdeeds. In the third case, you commit a full defeat which is one of the immediate misdeeds.

त्री क्षेट्र में लिका चारका लेका स्टार की सुष्य पार्चे के का चित्र पार्चे पार्

Here next is how downfalls become more or less serious through accumulation. If you commit from one to five downfalls, and fail to rectify it in the proper way, it is considered serious to a lesser degree. If you commit downfalls of a quantity that is countable, and fail to rectify it in the proper way, it is considered serious to a medium degree. If you commit a number of downfalls which is beyond all estimation—that is, more than you could ever say just how many there were—then it is considered serious to a greater degree.

१२.५४.याश्रेरश्वतात्वावर्यश्चित्रः व्री.ट्र.च्र.५८.८.याष्ट्रीयाध्याः हः यष्ट्रव्याः श्चेरः यरः श्चेत्रश्चरः यक्षेत्रः ताः यष्ट्रवः योश्वेशः वर्ष्

This is how it is explained in scripture; of the three different descriptions presented there, the ones based on the nature and the object of the deed should not be applied literally, but rather in the present context. The other three though are just the same.

यदुःक्षेर्रःस्ट्रिरःयःयःस्ट्रिरःयःसःस्वेरःयःदुःविद्यःस्यःस्विरःयद्वेरःयद्वे १२.यःभ्रःवेद्यःयःयस्ट्रिरःयःवद्विरःयःद्वे। स्ट्रिरःयःभ्रञ्चःवेरःसःस्विद्यान्यःसःस्

Here is what we mean when we say that a person has committed a downfall out of "ignorance." This is where the downfall is committed because the person fails to conceive of the downfall as a downfall; this in turn occurs because the person has not learned what the downfalls are: they have never studied them, or understood them.

विषागुरासुरावाववुरावादीस्यायार्भे वुराधारावहेरारेषायार्न्य विषाविदाया

लेब्रायर वाब्रुबायबाद्वर या है। यर हो। वाब्रुबाय वाब्रुव्य वाद्वर्

Next is a case where you commit a downfall even though you know it's a downfall. This happens when the downfall occurs because, despite the fact that you have learned what all the downfalls are, you fail to keep your mind on what you're doing. This itself occurs because you forget yourself, or fail to stay watchful.

क्षेत्र:य्रेन्य:य्याप्त्याप्त्याप्त्याप्त्याप्त्रःय्याप्त्रःय्याप्त्यःय्याप्त्रःय्याप्त्यःय्याप्त्यःयःय्याप्त् भ्रम:र्न्यःयाप्त्यःय्याप्त्याप्त्यःयःय्याप्त्यःयःय्याप्त्यःयःय्याप्त्यःयःयःयःय्याप्त्यःयःयःयःयःयःयःयःयःयःयःयः

Here's what an "attack of mental affliction" refers to. This happens when one of the three poisons takes over your mind, and you are helpless to keep yourself from committing the bad deed; you do it even as you think to yourself, "This is not something I should be doing."

यद्रः अः भून्यक्षेत्रः त्राक्षः याश्चित्रः भून् व्यत्त्रः भून्यत्त्रः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून्यः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून्यः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून्यः भून् व्यत्तः भून् व्यत्तः भून्यः भून्यः

Committing a downfall out of a "lack of respect" means that you do so because, even though you have already learned what the downfalls are, you commit one of them anyway, for one of the nine reasons that follow: (1) You are still attracted to a lower level of behavior; or (2) you fail to live the proper causes in the past, and so you have no appreciation for the way of the practice of virtue; or you have no respect for (3) the state of nirvana; or (4) the dharma; or (5) the community; or else (6) you admit no object of veneration; or (7) you have no sense of shame; or (8) you have no desire to follow the code; or (9) you feel a kind of disrespect where you will do whatever you feel like doing. The first two of the above lead to the kind of downfall which does not involve mental affliction; the latter two lead to the kind which does. All the above is quoted from the abbreviated form of the principal text on the practice of discipline.

How to Avoid Breaking Your Bodhisattva Vows

र्स्क विकाल्य्न स्ट्रेंब मान्य म्यून मान्य विकास्य मान्य विकास्य मान्य स्टर्स स्ट्रिय स्ट्रिय स्ट्रेंब स्ट्रिय स्ट्रि

Here are the antidotes for these four causes that lead you to commit a downfall:

- (1) Make yourself an expert in knowing what the downfalls are.
- (2) Keep a high level of mindfulness and vigilance.
- (3) Determine which of the mental afflictions is most prevalent in your character, and make serious efforts to apply the appropriate spiritual antidote.
- (4) Develop a sense of shame, and consideration; maintain deep feelings of respect for the Teacher, and for the precepts.

For the next selection we return to the String of Shining Jewels:

Whenever you perform any of the confessions mentioned throughout here you must do so with all four of the antidote forces complete. Here too is a method for restoring your vows before the community in the ceremony of restoration and purification, or on any similar occasion.

First make three prostrations; stay standing then and bow, with your palms joined at your breast. Speak the following:

I call on all the Buddhas, and every bodhisattva, and the entire bodhisattva community in every corner of the universe. I am now going to perform the ceremony for restoring my vows, for I have made a uncountable number of mistakes while trying to keep them. In great respect, I request that you listen.

Then crouch down, join your palms at your breast, and repeat the following three full times:

I call on all the Buddhas, and every bodhisattva, and the entire bodhisattva community in every corner of the universe. I am the

bodhisattva named (state your own name), and I have made an uncountable number of mistakes by committing certain actual deeds, or else actions that are similar to these deeds, which represent stains of the lesser or medium kind, and are included into the group of eighteen root downfalls. In particular I have made the mistake of (choose the appropriate downfall or downfalls listed next), which is completely against the tradition of the bodhisattva vows, as described in the following lines, and other verses from the ancient books which tell how one commits a root failure.

Because of an attachment to gain or honor, You praise yourself and criticize others. From possessiveness you don't give Dharma Or things to the suffering, with no protector. You won't listen to another's apology, And out of anger strike someone else. You do something to give up the greater way, You teach a false dharma, or else you steal Things that belong to the Three Jewels. These, we say, are the failures of vows.

Beyond these I have made an uncountable number of mistakes by committing certain actual deeds, or else actions that are similar to these deeds, which are included into the group of forty-six secondary offenses. In particular I have made the mistake of (state the appropriate offense or offenses), which is completely against the tradition of the bodhisattva vows, as described in the following lines, and other verses from the ancient books which tell how one commits the secondary offenses.

You fail to offer thrice to the Three Jewels, Or else you let a thought of desire go on.

Beyond these too, I have failed to think, six times each day, of the good things that come from developing the wish to become enlightened for all living beings.

I have failed to bring up in my heart, six times per day, the prayer for this wish for enlightenment.

In my heart, I have given up on certain persons.

I have not made true efforts to amass the two great collections, of merit and wisdom.

I have not tried to stop the four black actions.

I have not tried to follow the four white actions.

I have not made true efforts to train myself in vowed morality, and the morality of collecting goodness, and the morality of working for all living beings.

I have not made true efforts to train myself in the six perfections of giving and he rest.

I have not made true efforts in working for all living beings through the four ways of collecting disciples.

When the time came for me to make efforts in preparing Dharma and material things for those who needed them, I have failed to make such efforts.

I have grasped to my conceptions of being helped or harmed by others, and based on that I have distinguished between them, and begun to take sides, and started then to like some people, and dislike other people, and not care at all about others. I have not taken myself to holy ones for instruction.

I have not followed the practices of proper learning and contemplation in both the profound and the far-reaching traditions of the bodhisattvas.

When making use of food, or clothes, or various kinds of furniture, I have failed to do so with thoughts of helping others.

When practicing giving and the rest of the six perfections, I have failed to do so with a heart filled with thoughts of helping others.

I have failed to make efforts in activities that would bring help and happiness to others, and that would take away their suffering.

In short, I have made an uncountable number of mistakes which are completely against the tradition of the bodhisattva vows. I, the bodhisattva named (state your name), do hereby admit these mistakes in the presence of all the Buddhas, and every bodhisattva, and the entire bodhisattva community from every corner of the universe. I openly admit them, I hide nothing, I reveal them all. And I swear that, from this moment on, I will keep myself from all such deeds.

By admitting all, and revealing all, I shall be at peace; but not admitting, and not revealing, I cannot be at peace.

When this is said, a person who is fitting to act as the head of the ceremony, or the like, should repeat three times the question of seeing and restraining:

Do you truly see that these are mistakes?

And then the others should respond,

I do.

Then the head should say,

From now on, will you restrain yourself?

And the others should respond,

From now on, I will.

Alternately they can answer,

I make the most pure and solemn vow to do so, in all keeping with the Dharma, and the teachings of discipline.

After the three repetitions, the statement of receiving and affirming should be made.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Five: Death and the Realms of Existence, Part One

The following selection is taken from the Illumination of the Path to Freedom, a commentary by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, on the Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha), written by the Buddhist master Vasubandhu in the fourth century AD. Master Vasubandhu's root text verses do not appear in the original of the commentary, and have been inserted at the appropriate points. Parts of these verses woven into the commentary have been printed in bold to show the close connection of the two works, and section headings have been provided for clarity.

1
The Twenty Parts of the Desire Realm

|नुश्वायायाः भीत्रम्याः नुत्रायः न्द्रम् । |भी: इस्रयः न्द्रम्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः न्द्रम् । |भी: इस्रयः न्द्रम्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः न्द्रम् । |भी: नुश्वायः निष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः निष्यः नुष्यः । |भी: नुश्वायः नुष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः नुष्यः ।

Hell beings, craving spirits, animals, Men, six different types of pleasure beings: These are the realm of desire. They are twenty By dividing up hell and the continents.

[III.1-4]

प्रमाना प्रमाना प्रमान के स्त्रा करें विश्व क्ष्या माने का प्रमान के स्त्रा के स्त्रा के स्त्रा के स्त्रा के स

स्रोधारा वार्चियात्रा वार्चियात्रा वार्चियात्रात्र विष्ठा व्यात्र व

One may begin with the following question:

Above, you mentioned "states of mental affliction with three realms." With these and other references you have been indicating that the mind and mental functions, as well as other objects, may be divided into categories that relate to three different realms. Just what are these three realms?

These three are the desire realm, the form realm, and the formless realm. We'll start by describing the first of them.

स्रम्भः द्वा विभावमः मानवः वः व्या द्वा स्ममः द्वा विभावमः वि

Hell beings [Sanskrit: naraka] are so called because they live without [Skt: na] any comfort [Skt: rañj]. Craving spirits [preta] are so called either because they come to their state without turning back [apunarāvṛt] or because they are overcome [parīta] by thirst. Animals [tiryañca] are given this name because they go along on all fours, in a bent-over position [tiryac]. Men get their name from their mental prowess [the Sanskrit etymology also holds in English], and the six different types of pleasure beings or gods [divaukas] of the desire realm are so called because their homes are in the sky [div]. These are the realm of desire.

त्रवेश्वत्रक्षीं श्रक्षवे स्त्रित्ते । यहेश्वत्त्रक्षित्ते विष्टा स्त्रिया विष्टा विष

यात्रशायाः सेयाशायाः सारोशायतेः सुरारो

The realm of desire may also be divided into **twenty** different classes of beings. **By dividing hell** into the eight hot hells, we get a total of ten different births of misery. **By dividing** human beings up into those belonging to each of **the** four **continents**, we get a total of ten happy kinds of birth. There is a reason why we make no separate count of the eight cold hells and various partial hells: the former are not the principal hells, and the latter are indefinite as to lifespans, locations, and so on.

Why We Call It the "Desire Realm"

द्वात्ताः चुर्वे। वर्देन् प्याने व्याप्ताः विष्याः वर्षे प्यान्यः प्रमानिक्षः व्यान्यः व्यान्यः वर्षे प्रमानिक्षः विष्यः वर्षे प्रमानिक्षः वरम् प्रमानिक्षः वर्षे प्रमानिक्षः

Someone may ask why we call it the "desire realm." We do so because it is a realm full of desire. And what is desire? Craving aimed at getting sex or food.

The Seventeen Parts of the Form Realm

|मॅदि:अदे:मानुश:दम्य:महुन:वे।
|माञ्जाका:मानुन:काःके:मानुन:कें:कें:कें।
|मानुमका:मानुन:काःके:मानुक:यःके।
|मानुःय:काःके:मञ्जून:यःके।

The seventeen locations above it
Are the realm of form. The levels of
The various concentrations for it, three.
Eight different levels correspond to the fourth.

[III.5-8]

|याडीयोशःशक्र्याःमुः शुरूः प्रवेशयश्यात्रश्यात्रः युर्गः । |यश्यात्रात्रः स्त्रेत्रः प्रवेशः याद्यः याद्यः

Consider now the seventeen different locations above it—above the desire realm. This is the realm of form, for it is first of all beyond the level of the desire realm and can lead to the development of the particular mental afflictions of this level. Secondly, it is a realm where form reaches its height.

यविष्यात्रम्यात्रे प्रत्ये प्रत्ये स्वर्धे स्वर्ये स्वर्धे स्वर्ये स्वर्धे स्वर्धे स्वर्ये स्

This realm of form has seventeen parts in that there are **three levels** each corresponding to each of the first three **of the various** types of **concentration** that act as causes **for** a birth in "it"—that is, the form realm. And there are **eight different levels** that **correspond to the fourth** and final type of concentration. These correspondences are as follows.

स्यः रेश स्यायः स्वायः स्व

One may engage in three different degrees of causal meditation relating to the first concentration level: these are the greater, the medium, and the lesser. These three degrees of meditation cause one to take birth, respectively, into the levels known as "Class of the Pure," "Reciting Before the Pure One," and "the Great Pure One."

नियोः क्रियः याश्रुयः पुरस्य विष्णे स्त्रियः याश्रियः याश्

Meditation on the same three degrees, relating to the second concentration level, leads to respective births in the levels known as "Lesser Light," "Immeasurable Light," and "Clear Light." Meditation again on the three

degrees, those related to the third concentration level, leads to respective births in the levels known as "Lesser Virtue," "Immeasurable Virtue," and "Widespread Virtue."

Meditation on the stained parts of the fourth concentration level by ordinary beings leads them to a birth at one of the three stages. They are known as "Cloudless," "Birth of Merit," and the "Great Result." When realized beings meditate on five different stages of the fourth concentration level, they take their respective births in what are called the "Five Pure Places." The five causal stages are known as "the lesser" (three alternations), "the medium" (six alternations), "the great" (nine alternations), "the very great," (twelve alternations), and "the really very great" (fifteen alternations).

4 Why We Call It the "Form Realm"

বিষাধান্ত্রধান্ত্রধান্ত্রধান্ত্রধান্তর্থা রূপ্রধান্তর্বধান্তর্বভালন্তর্বন্ধান্তর্বন্ধান্তর্বভালন্তর্বন্ধান্তর্বধান্তর্বন্ধান্তর্বন

One may ask why we call it the "form realm." It is so named because the characteristic which distinguishes it is the extraordinary form there.

|देर-दे-रेश-दर-श्र्या-य-प्यत। |सेसम्यग्री-सुद-दे-हेद-य-प्येद।

There is no place for the formless realm; Four kinds, depending on that given rise. In this one the mental continuum Is based on the discrete type and life as well.

[III.9-12]

याः श्री श्राचा विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास वितास विकास व

There is no other, separate place for the formless realm. A person who is born there must first have attained single-pointed concentration relating to the formless realm, and must not have lost this ability since that time. When such a person dies and migrates, he is born into the formless realm at the very place where he died, the four "name" heaps of the formless realm coming into existence there. There are however four kinds of levels to the formless realm, depending on the relative quality of that meditation to which one had given rise and which had caused his birth there. These are the levels known as the "Door of Limitless Space" and so on.

6 How Formless Beings Live

श्रेम्बारायायायायायहेब्यरायस्वरायायेवार्वे।

"If there's no form in the formless realm," one may ask, "then what provides a basis for the stream of mind there?" In this one—in the formless realm—the continuum of the mind is based on the continuation of a discrete type of being and upon life, as well. The words "as well" are meant to indicate that this stream of mind is also based on the ordinary being, on the factors not linked with mind, on holds, on the characteristics of birth, and so on.

7 Why We Call It the "Formless Realm"

स्रवेत्र स्राच्या व्याच्या व्याच्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्या व्याच्य

And why is this realm called the "formless realm"? It is given the name because it is a realm which is absolutely devoid of form.

8
The Five Types of Birth

|देर-वे-द्युत्य-र्स्यव्य-दर्यो-व-स्था |दर-वो-सेट-वोश-वस्त्र-दे-द्या |क्रिंव-सेट्य-उत-सेव-त्युट-वस्त्र-सेव| |सेस्य-उत-वेश-तु-वर-सेद-सेव|

Five types of birth, hells and the rest, in them. Indicated by their names. They're not The affliction, but rather neutral ethically. Known as "sentient beings"—the inbetween not.

[III.13-6]

|मिथेश्रामार्थे। प्रमाश्रमार्थेशम् १८५२ है। रिक्षियानायार्थेम् श्रामार्थात्रम्

नुश्वायान्दा धीन्वायान्दा तुनावर्षोन्दा सीन्दा सुन्ने प्राप्ता विकासम्बद्धाः विकासम्याः विकासम्बद्धाः विकासम्बद्ध

Now there are **five types of birth**, those of a **hell** being **and the rest**, **in them**—in the three realms. They are **indicated by their** own separate **names**: hell beings, craving spirits, animals, humans, and pleasure beings. [Refer to the Sanskrit etymologies for these types listed in the commentary to the first verse of this chapter.]

यस्त्राक्षः सः भ्रत्याक्षः स्रोत् । स्र्वान्यानः वीः वरः तुः वार्त्रवाक्षः स्रोतः न्येवः वर्षे । स्रोतः न्येवः । स्रोतः । स्रोतः

"If there are only five types of birth," one may ask, "then in which of these two types do you include the lesser pleasure beings?" According to realized master Asanga,

लेब्र-रम्बर-ताला-रमामा स्रु-स्रु-राध्येव लेब्र-मास्ट-र्न। मानेब स्रु-स्याप्त स्रु-राध्येव स्रु-

...They are to be included among the full-fledged pleasure beings. This is because they vie with these beings in their physical appearance and material wealth, and belong to the same family. The lesser pleasure beings are though inferior in their qualities to the complete pleasure beings, and thus we refer to them as "pleasure beings" but [in Sanskrit and Tibetan] with the negative attached to their name, to indicate inferiority.

। अर्दे (व रेव) र वाल्वा यश सु अ धेर धेर वाश दर तु र वर्षे र वाहें वाश सर दर।

The sutra called *Constant Recollection* explains that the lesser pleasure beings should be grouped with craving spirits or among the animals. A number of other sutras also teach them as being a sixth type of being.

निर्दर्भेत्रायः देवाः भ्राः द्वाः वाः देवाः धोः द्वाः वार्त्रेवायः श्रः वार्त्रेवायः भ्रेः व्यक्षः वार्त्रेवायः व्यक्षः वार्त्रेवायः व्यवदाः विद्यायः विद्

As for harmful spirits, some may be counted among the pleasure beings, and others among the craving spirits. The spirits known as "those who live on smells" are grouped into the pleasure beings, as they serve as their musicians. The great *garuda* birds, the "big-belly" and "humanoid" spirits, as well as the serpent-like *naga* creatures are all explained as belonging to the animal type.

या विकास के ति वि

The spirits known as "flesh-eaters," "crazy-makers," and "those who cause forgetfulness," as well as the *ma-mo* spirits, are all considered different kinds of craving spirits.

9
Knowledge of One's Birth

विश्वेतः से स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स

One is cognizant while entering,
Another so while staying too; others
As they issue. One more ignorant all.
This is always the case with those from eggs.
Three are the types who enter the womb or such:
Wheel emperors and the two self-born,
Respectively, due to the vastness of their
Deeds, their wisdom, or the both of them.

[III.61-8]

द्र्य। ध्रुं, ब्रुं, क्षेत्र, क्षेत्र, क्षेत्र, क्षेत्र, क्ष्य, क्षेत्र, क

"In the lines above," one may begin, "you mentioned beings' entering the womb because of a mistaken impression.' Does this hold true in every case?" One type is cognizant of what they are doing while they are entering the womb, yet lose this awareness during their stay there. Another type is cognizant not only of entering the womb but while they are staying there too. Still others are moreover cognizant as they issue from the womb as well. One more type is ignorant of all three, cognizant of neither entering, nor staying in, nor issuing from the womb. Those who are born from eggs, even if they are self-made victors, are always of this last type, and it alone—ignorant. This is what they say.

ल्या प्रतिकाक्षी क्रिया सामिक्ष स्वित्त स्वाप्त स्वाप

"Just who is it," one may ask, "that represents each of these three types—those who are cognizant of entering the womb but not staying there, and so on?" Three are the types who enter the womb as such; respectively, wheel-

empowered **emperors and the two "self-born"**—referring to self-made victors and Buddhas. They enter as they do **due to** the fact that they have been able, respectively, to amass **vast** collections of **deeds** (referring in this case to merit), **wisdom, and** merit and wisdom **both**.

10 The Lives of Craving Spirits

The following selection is taken from the Great Book on the Steps of the Teaching, composed by the Kadampa Geshe Drolungpa, Lodru Jungne (c. 1100 AD).

I have already explained how the deeds which lead to a life as a craving spirit or an animal are precisely medium or lesser instances of the ten wrong actions. Now I will describe these two kinds of beings themselves, from the point of view of specific characteristics.

Now I will address the lives of craving spirits from the point of view of what causes them to be.

विष्ठ-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ विक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-५-१ मुक्-१-१ मुक-१-१ मुक्-१-१ मुक्-१-१

।র্র:८४:५६८४:এ৯:শ্বু८:४२:५४४:४४। । মন:৫৪ন|৯:৯८:নমন|৯:७:५न|৯:৫র্র:নম:सूर।

It comes from a part or parts of the ten paths of deeds,
But mostly because the person's misled by his cheapness
Or jealousy and forgets the three kinds of giving.
He neglects to share with all who were offered a thing,
Reduces what was earmarked, or never gives it at all,
Redirects it, prevents it, or anything of the like.
A mind full of this dirt collects a mass of loathsome deeds;
Awesome strong, they drag him down to the life of a craving spirit.

|भ्रो:न्यो:य:यर्ड्:र्स:यद्वैट:न् श्रुन:यदे:क:न्ट:क्रेड:र्स:न्या:यो:ख्र्या:अर:य्युर:यदे:क:

Here a "part" of the ten bad deeds can refer to performing them to a medium extent, or else to a "part" in the sense of some residual karmic energy from having performed them to a greater extent. A part or parts like this lead to this particular rebirth, as do the following deeds described in the text called *Constant Awareness:*

भ्री.चर. त्यीर. हो। त्या.क्षर. त्या. रेया श्रीर. त्या. यहीय. त्या. हेर. त्या. त्या. हेर. हेर. त्या. हेर. हेर. त्या. हेर. त्या. हेर.

Most of these are people who were misled by their own cheapness, or by their desire for the miserable possessions of this world, or who were overwhelmed by a hope for the miserable offerings that are all someone here can present you with. And because of this they found they could not give to others. They

could not give to any of those who might come to ask: they gave neither to practitioners of the Dharma, nor to Brahmins, nor the poor, nor needy, nor destitute. They did no good deeds. They observed nothing of that great sea of ethical living, neither for this life, nor for the life beyond. They provided nothing for their children, or for their wives, or to the men and women who served them, or to all the others whom it was their responsibility to sustain with meat and bread. Their cheapness swindled them out of all they could hope for, in this world and the next. They are people too who were swindled by their quarreling, or by jealousy. These for the most part then are the kinds of people who take birth as craving spirits; and most of them turn into those craving spirits who are witches.

1ने प्रवित्र नु पर्शेश दर्श आ दी दाया श्रीयाश्वाय श्वाय श्वाय स्वाय अर से न्या मी शागुर हैं।

In addition to these kinds of actions there is failing to hand over offerings that were earmarked for a certain virtuous purpose, and all the rest: a whole mass of different bad deeds that can lead you to this kind of birth.

11 The Suffering of Craving Spirits

क्षर्वियाःचर्ष्ठाः श्रीः शिरःसरः श्री

Here is some detail about the suffering experienced by these beings.

|श्र.लूश.स्य.यार्टेट.र्जेयो.यर्जेल.ययंट.लश.उर्था |क्श.याश्रेश.यीय.योट.यग्रंश.सूश.र्जेया.त.ला |चश.सूश.सूय.त.२४.यी.यी.योथा |ज्रूटश.सूर्य.या.ल.सी.टेट.४ट.रेट.यू।

They're of three types, distinguished by the obstacles to what They live on: outer problems and inner, problems with food Or drink. All of them share though the infinite pain Of hunger and thirst, intense as the flames of a fire.

१८दे.ज.र्सेयो.यर्सजा.यी.यिर.तर.अर्ट्र.यर्से.य.योशिश.जश.ज्र्रास्त्रास्त्रीर.रयो.ज.सीयु.

र्रे.श्रेन्.तत्। व्याश्वात्त्रव्यात्त्रात्त्र्याः क्रि.जा.श्र्याश्वात्त्रः त्याः श्र्याश्वात्तः त्याः श्र्याश्वात्तः त्याः श्र्याश्वातः त्याः श्र्याः श्र्याः त्याः श्र्याः श्र्याः श्र्याः श्र्याः श्याः श्र्याः श्याः श्र्यः त्याः श्याः श्र्यः श्याः श्य

The sufferings of these craving spirits can all be reduced to three different kinds. First are those with outer obstacles to what they need to live on. People like this approach a place like a mountain spring, or a pond or stream, and catch sight of something that they could eat or drink. They race ahead to get it, only to be forced back by beings cutting them with knives, or beating them with clubs and such. Or else they come to the side of some water and find themselves unable to drink of it, for then it looks to them like blood and pus or the like.

यवत्यपृर्वेत्रः से त्रायायाः मे स्वायाः स्वयाः स्वायाः स्वयाः स्वयः स

Those craving spirits with inner obstacles have mouths no bigger than the eye of a needle, spouting with flame. Their throats are the size of a guitar string, but their bellies are huge. Even where there is no one to stop them, and even when they can locate something to eat or drink, they find themselves unable to get it down.

तब्दरशः श्रेष्ट्रियाः योषः क्षेत्रायः स्थेः यग्रोषः भ्रेष्टः योषः त्रेष्टः याः त्रेष्ट्रयाः याः व्याप्तः स्थे १ वर्षः स्थार्थे स्थार्थः स्थ

Next are the craving spirits with obstacles to what they can eat or drink. An example would be the spirit whose name was "The Necklace of Flame." Every single thing this spirit tried to eat, and every single thing it tried to drink as well, would burn it instead; and whatever went down would anyway never relieve those feelings of hunger and thirst.

| श्वेत: श्वेत: अ: तः ते त्रः तः त्रे। से: रू: अ: अ: त्रेत: त्रेत: तः से। तर्रेत: तः स्राप्त: स्राप्त: स्राप्त:

यार्वेर् प्राञ्चर पर्ने र्वं श्रें त्रायर मुकायर्थे । । या वेया वे र र यो । या वेया वे र र यो या व्यव्हर स्वर य

Some of these spirits are referred to as the "ones who eat filth." This refers to the fact that they are forced to eat feces, and drink urine; they are completely unable to partake of anything other than putrid, poisonous, disgusting excrement. Others are constantly cutting off pieces of their own flesh to get something to eat; they can never find anything which is clean, or fresh.

All of them have the look of a scorched piece of wood; the searing pain of hunger and thirst have dried up all their skin and flesh and blood. Their entire look has changed: their faces are covered with hair; their visage is gaunt, from hunger and thirst; their tongues pass over their lips, dry, and parched. They run from place to place, terrified, and aimless.

क्र्याबाक्षरम् । विक्रिक्षर प्रमान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्

For more detail on the karma and suffering of these spirits, you should study further the sutras themselves. The further divisions of the spirits into a multitude of different types all come from particulars of the karma involved in creating them, which comes itself from the great variety of motivations present in their past deeds. As such, the full range of different kinds of suffering, and thoughts, and migrations, and locations of these craving spirits is simply beyond all reckoning.

The great majority of these beings have fallen to their current state because of cheapness and jealousy; they have created the karmic power of the ten bad deeds, in their actions and speech and thoughts, to an overwhelming degree. What was the cause of these deeds? All of them are performed relative to other living beings; it is towards them that we act; and the karma we collect comes through the way we relate to them, flows from our interaction with others. We may be wandering again and again through births of misery, but it seems that still we are not tired of it.

यक्ताब्रिट वर्ष्ट्र प्रमास्थाने वर्य प्रमास्थाने वर्ष्ट्र प्रमास्थाने वर्ष्ट्र प्रमास्थाने वर्ष्ट्र प्रमास्थाने वर्ष्ट्र प्रमास्थाने व

Our minds, like restless monkeys, have lived in the circle of suffering life for time with no beginning. We have grown accustomed to staying out in a rain of all kinds of suffering. Weighted down in the shackles of a whole variety of different bodies, we drag ourselves again and again up the great mountain of the wheel of rebirth. But still this is something we find hard to realize, to recognize, for our minds are filled with the habits of our suffering past. We must seek, from the beginning, to control this restless monkey—the mind flitting constantly from one thing to another. If we fail in this task we will only come to the unstoppable torment of the lower realms; locked in the circle of birth by the enemy of our own minds, we will forever lose any kind of happiness.

If you want to know then what it is that brings a person to the birth of a craving spirit, it is primarily the failure to perform the three kinds of giving, and being overcome by the emotions of cheapness, and jealousy. [The three kinds of giving are: giving material needs, giving freedom from fear, and giving the Dharma.]

|स्र्वसः ५८: ख्रुं प्रयाः वीकाः व्याः वीकाः ।स्र्वसः प्रयाः वीकाः विद्यसः ५८: ख्रुं प्रयाः वीकाः विद्यसः प्रयाः वीकाः विद्यसः प्रयाः वीकाः विद्यसः प्रयाः वीकाः विद्यसः विद्य

Their heads are caught in the noose of incredibly Powerful karma, which drags them helplessly on; Neither spiritual guides, nor their children or wife, Nor other loved ones can help them in the least. On the whole, their size and lifespan are nothing fixed; The longest is five hundred days that are made of months.

The bodily dimensions of beings in all three of the lower realms are nothing that are fixed; the size of the body they possess, and the suffering that they can therefore feel, increase according to the power of the karma they have collected previously. On the whole, the lifespans of craving spirits are nothing which is fixed; the very longest they can live is five hundred days which each last as long as a month among human beings.

12 The Lives of Animals

%।२५.५मूदुःश्चे.वा४४.ग्रीःश्चे.२८.श्वे.वर्षःग्रीःधि२.तरःश्री

Next we will describe the lives of animals, first from the point of view of what causes this type of birth, and what types of suffering they have.

नियम् अन्याश्चर्यात्रः क्ष्यः विष्णः विषणः विष्णः विष्णः

Next is what comes from a part or parts of bad deeds, And mainly from lesser forms of the acts of fools, Collecting bad karma from disregarding, and such. You fall to an animal birth, killing and eating each other, Or becoming the property of pleasure beings or men, Helplessly slaughtered, or forced to do their bidding.

What causes a person to be born as an animal are the parts of the ten bad deeds which are considered lesser forms of these deeds. In particular are cases where especially ignorant people disregard minor rules of morality, and do so on a continual basis; or else where they collect a great number of wrong deeds such as failing to act with respect towards those who are worthy of such respect.

पर्या

पर्य

पर

How is it that these animals suffer? They kill each other, and use each other for food: the ones that are bigger, or more powerful, slay and devour the others, swallowing them even before they have stopped breathing, and such. Or else they hurt each other, in every imaginable way. Some kinds of animals become possessions of humans or other types of beings, and are slaughtered for their meat, or skins, or bones and the rest. Or else they are forced to do the bidding of their masters; mercilessly and helplessly they are sheared or milked or herded or saddled or dragged along—whatever their owners wish.

13 The Six Sufferings of Human Life

The following selection is taken from the Chest of Riches, by Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851), an important link in the lineage leading from Je Tsongkapa, through Pabongka Rinpoche, and down to our own root lama, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin. The work is a commentary on the Path of Ease, a famous lam-rim text by His Holiness the First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen (1567?-1662).

|र्देय।यर्द्रजा:यश्रम:तर्द्रशः से। यर्द्र्यशःय।

Here next is the actual contemplation of the six forms of suffering. A summary of these in verse goes as follows:

Life has no certainty, we know no satisfaction, and shed our bodies Over and over, take birth again, over and over, go over and over From high to low, with no companion: and so we suffer, six ways.

है। र्या.योश्चर.दे.वर्यीर.य.र्टट.बुका.श्योका.हे। यप्त्रा.क्चीटका.ताका ग्री.ट्.च्.श्ची.य.बुयो.येटका.द्वीय.क्टर.वर्यका.यी.र्क्या.यर्क्चरा.य्वीर.पाक्षरा.याच्चरा.य्वीर.पाक्षरा.याच्चरा.य्वीर.याच्चरा.याच्चर्यराच्चरा.याच्चरा.याच्चर्यराच्चरा.याच्चर्यर्याच्चर्यर्याच्चर्याच्चर्यर्याच्चर्याच्चर्याच्चर्याच्चर्याच्यर्यर्याच्यर्याच्यर्यः.याच्यर्याच्यर्याच्यर्याच्यर्ये

The first of the sufferings mentioned here is [1] the fact that life has no certainity. We have taken birth here, in the cycle of suffering, and by its very nature our birth has two causes: the pair of our own past deeds, and our mental afflictions. The only result that can ever come from these two causes is something which is, in its very essence, pain. And the kinds of pain that come to us are those in the words that include the line, "Enemies turn to those we love..." The *Letter to a Friend* describes this suffering as follows:

विक्तिर्म्प्तरम्भः स्ट्रिस्यः स्

Your father turns to your very own son, your mother to your wife; And the one who was your enemy becomes a relative dear to you. The complete reverse of this happens too, and thus it is we say That in the circle of life there is no certainty at all.

वधिरायत्रा र्या. शहरायवेशाश्चात्र्यात्रायः याप्ता धरादेः यश्चात्रेयाः श्वेत्रः स्वात्रः याप्तात्रः याप्तात्रः य

त्र प्रतिश्वात्त्र श्रीं त्र प्रतिश्वात्त्र विद्य प्रतिश्वात्त श्रीं त्र प्रतिश्वात स्र प्रति स्र प्रतिश्वात स्र प्रतिश्व स्र प्रति स्र प्रति स्र प्रति स्र

What this verse is saying is that it is possible for the person who was your father in your last life to turn into your son in this life. Your mother in your last life then can turn to your wife in this one. Your worst enemy can turn into your dearest relative, and the complete reverse of all these can happen as well: your son in your past life turns into your father in this one, and all the rest—there is no absolutely no certainty who is who. And that's not all. Even in this present life, we can see with our own two eyes how uncertain life can be: a person who was ready to murder someone the year before becomes in the following year their bosom friend, and so on. People though grasp to the occasional appearance that these relationships are something that are certain, and then begin to feel strong emotions of attachment, or anger. These lead them to spend their lives helping some people, and hurting others. They act like some kind of animal, dazed and confused, wandering aimlessly across some great wasteland. The animal runs, with no idea what it does, exhausting itself in the pursuit of what seems to be some great goal. And then some man appears and shouts at it, "What are you doing!" And then the animal reverses direction, and runs just as purposefully the opposite way. So give up now this tendency you have of making any distinction between your friends and your enemies, this habit of liking the friends, and disliking the enemies. Come to realize that there is not a single object in this entire suffering life that you can trust. Study to find disgust for this kind of existence.

र्दिमकी विमायाने। विविद्यायने याही र्यम सुद्याप्त विमार्भेग्नमाने।

The next suffering, [2] the fact that we can never find any sense of satisfaction, is described in the words that include, "No matter what kind of happiness you find here in the circle of suffering life..." The verse here is:

१२.५४.भ्र.भर्क्ट्.पद्धि.जश्च.संस्था १र्स्ट्रेस्य.सं.यद्यट.यद्ध.य्यंत्र्य्य.यःस्था १र्स्ट्रेस.सं.यद्यट.यद्ध.य्यंत्र्य.यःस्था १२.यश.क्ष.श्चट.क्षेट.यद्धयःस्था

Each one of us has fed upon a massive amount of milk Exceeding the water in all four seas; and those still living within This suffering life, who follow the way of ordinary beings, Can still expect to drink a measure infinitely more.

The point of the verse is as follows. Suppose that you could manage to bring back, and collect together all the mothers' milk that you had ever fed upon in all the different bodies you have taken upon yourself. The massive amount of this milk would exceed the water in all four seas. The "four seas" here are different parts of the greater outer ocean, named from the four different hues of its four quarters as the colors of Mount Supreme reflect upon them.

Even the deepest parts of these seas, and their other distances, are something that it is possible to measure; yet the number of births that you and I have taken are limitless in number. As such we have already drunk more milk of

our mothers than the water these seas hold in them. And if we continue the way we are, if we go on following the life of ordinary beings, failing to practice the path, then we can still expect to drink a measure of milk which is infinitely more.

The meaning of the words "a measure infinitely more" is not "infinitely more than what they drank before," since the milk we have sucked in the past is itself beyond all measurement. The point rather is that we will from this point on be forced to drink again a quantity that is greater than all the water in the four seas.

पर-दीर।

The whole point of enjoying things which are pleasant is to bring ourselves some kind of contentment. The fact though is that, no matter how much pleasure we may feel with a thing in this cycle of suffering, we never reach any sense of satisfaction. Much less; for the normal reaction is that our feelings of attachment grow more, and this forces us to wander around even longer in the circle of life. And what the pleasures end up bringing to us are great many different kinds of suffering—unbearable pains that dwarf the pleasures themselves.

So too there was in days long ago a wonderful child who was born from the head of a king named Gupali. The child was named "Headborn," and known as well as "Nurse-from-me." The astrologers foretold that he would someday be the emperor of the world.

This prince sought to make great efforts in doing good deeds, in order to provide for the food, clothing, and other needs of his people. After inquiring into the ways of bringing this about, he made great prayers that his subjects would be able to find the food, clothing, and other needs without any effort at all. As a result, people began to get anything they wished for: crops sprang forth without anyone ever planting them; jewels fell like raindrops from the sky; clothing grew like leaves from the branches of wonderful trees; and the like.

Because of the incredible force of the good deeds he had done, Headborn came to be emperor over our entire world, the continent of Dzambu.

क्रिया सुराय स्था त्रिया सुराय स्था स्था स्था सुराय सुराय स्था सुराय सुरा

Dissatisfied with only this much, he then went to the eastern continent of Greatbody, and took it over as well. Dissatisfied with only this much, he then went to the western continent of Cattle-Users, and took it over as well. Dissatisfied with only this much, he hen went to the northern continent of Unpleasant Sound and took it over as well. Dissatisfied with only this much, he went to the Heaven of the Thirty-Three, and appropriated half the throne of Shakra, the king of the full pleasure beings. He reigned there with this being, for the length of 137 years.

Then, during the time of the Buddha named Kashyapa, a war with the lesser pleasure beings broke out. Even Shakra found himself unable to repulse them, but Headborn was successful. Then an evil thought began to form in his mind: dissatisfied with the idea of continuing to share his power with Shakra, he decided that he would have to murder the being.

This single thought erased all the good energy that was keeping Headborn in this realm, and he fell back to Dzambu Continent. Not long after that he was on his deathbed, ready to pass on to the next world. His ministers crowded around him, and asked the mighty being what it was that could force him to leave them so. And then it was that he gave his famous reply, describing how his bad thoughts had brought him to death, and so on.

क्षेत्रित्वार्थस्य देत्रः यद्भावत् स्थान्य स्

The next suffering is [3] the fact that we have to shed our bodies, over and over. This is indicated in the lines that include, "It doesn't matter what wonderful kind of body I may be able to attain..." The point here is that, regardless of all the bad deeds we might accumulate in order to maintain this body we have now, it is an absolute certainty that—in the end—we will be forced to shed it. The power of the wrong deeds we did for the sake of the body though we carry along in our mind, and they bring to us the eventual result of unbearable pain.

Beyond this are the lines that say,

The size of the stack of rotting corpses belonging to each of us
Would exceed an equivalent to the height of Mount Supreme itself.

Suppose that you could put together a huge stack of all the skeletons left from the bodies that any particular person had ever taken on, and then left behind. This stack would be more immense than Summit, the great mountain at the middle of the world.

The difficult expression *nyechik* here is meant to indicate "a quantity equivalent to the height," which is then exceeded.

ततः हिर्म विकास स्थान स्यान स्थान स्यान स्थान स्यान स्थान स

The next suffering is [4] the fact that we have to take birth again, over and over. The text at this point includes the line, "Since we have, for time with no beginning, been forced to take birth again, over and over..."

The Tibetan expression for "taking birth again" here is *nying tsam jorwa*, and is somewhat unusual. The *nying* means "again," and appears with the same sense in a number of other terms. One is *nying-gu*, "ultimate goal," or the further goal within a goal. Another is *nying-lak*, "appendage," meaning a further limb [such as a finger] splitting off from what is already a limb [such as an arm].

The point of the expression *nying tsam jorwa* then is to emphasize that, during our lives in this circle of suffering, we have not just crossed the border [*tsam jorwa*] between death and life at some isolated instance in the past, but rather that we have done so again and again [*nying*].

Beyond this we see the lines that say,

Suppose you tried to count the mothers all the way back to the beginning, using tiny balls
Of earth the size of juniper berries; the fact though is that the planet would not be enough.

Suppose, says the verse, that you took tiny bits of dirt from this massive planet Earth and rolled them up into little balls the size of juniper berries. Then you used them to count all the mothers: you start with the one who was your mother this time, and then her mother, and then her mother's mother, and so on. The dirt contained in the entire planet would run out before you finished your counting.

ल्लास्त्र स्ट्रीत् विकार्यः। विकार्

The next suffering is [5] the fact that we have to go from a high position to a low position, over and over again. This is indicated in the lines that include, "No matter how many good things you get in this cycle of suffering..." As the verse says,

First you reach the level of the one named Shakra, and merit the gifts of everyone in the world;

Then because of the force of past deeds done
you fall again to the surface of the earth.

First you reach the level of an emperor
who with the wheel reigns over all the world;

Then in the realms of the circle of birth
you become again the lowest of slaves.

यदुः ष्ट्रीयाः वश्वश्वरुट् । याश्चर्यः याः व्याः विष्यः वि

As the Word of the Discipline says,

A high position eventually leads to a fall, And relationships always come to separation; Life itself leads in its end to death.

The point here is that any good thing that ever happens here in the circle of suffering life eventually turns into some kind of problem. Try to concentrate on this pattern that life shows us: how we always go from something high to something low. Try to develop a healthy disgust for this kind of existence.

The final suffering is [6] the fact that we have no companion. This suffering is indicated in the lines about "going by oneself, alone, with no companion at all..." As the *Bodhisattva's Life* says,

Consider even just the body we have; If the flesh and bone that come with it Must one day rot and be parted from it, What need then to talk of our other friends?

All who are born are born alone, And all who die by themselves; Since they can't share the slightest bit of your pain, What use are the friends that hold you back?

As the verse points out, we tend to collect a great variety of different bad deeds for the sake of our friends. But when the time comes to experience the consequences of these actions, none of these same friends can participate in our pain at all. And in those situations where we try to practice some Dharma, these friends tend to hold us back. So what use are they, anyway?

14 The Lives of Those in the Intermediate State (the Bardo)

We return to the Illumination of the Path to Freedom for our final selections:

वित्रेरम्परक्रिः द्यास्त्रीः वास्त्री वित्रेर्यक्षेत्रस्त्राच्याः वित्रेर्यक्षेत्रस्त्राच्याः वित्रेर्यक्षेत्रस्त्रीः वित्रम्

These are the beings who occur between The being at death here, and the one at birth. Because they have not reached their destination, The beings between are not yet arrived.

[III.37-40]

लीतारीकास्त्रिक्षात्रे स्थात्र स्थात् स्यात् स्थात् स्यात् स्थात् स्यात् स्थात् स्थात

"You have stated," one may begin, "that the inbetween being is born complete. What is the basic nature of those beings who are between lives?" They may be described as **those beings who occur between** the point of **the being at death here** with the present stream of heaps **and** the point of the being **at birth.** These between beings are though not yet "arrived," for they have yet to reach the destination towards which they travel.

15
Logical Proof for the Existence of Inbetween Beings

विष्याः स्त्रेन्द्रम् । स्त्रिम्द्रम् । स्त्रेन्द्रम् । स्त्रेन्द्रम् । स्त्रेन्द्रम् । स्त्र

Because it's a thing like grain continuing, It doesn't occur from that being's end. Because this image does not exist, and since They are dissimilar, it's no example. First, there are no two together in one. Second, not the continuation, by two.

[III.41-6]

त्र्वतः क्रुंतः दः क्रुंतः क्र धिरः लेखा क्रुंदे क्रुंतः क्रु त्रवतः क्रुंतः क्रुंत

Now a member of the "Majority Group" of philosophers might come and say that there is no being between death and birth—that the being at birth comes right from the end of the being at death. Consider though the being at birth. It doesn't just occur from the end of the being at death, because it is a thing that goes along in a stream of consecutive stages, continuing on like the seeds for crops of grain. [That is, a seed turning into a fully developed plant requires the inbetween stage of a young sprout. Just so, an inbetween life is required for the being to move from the location of death to the location of rebirth. (This explanation is from the famed commentary of Chim Jampay Yang.)]

16 Scriptural Proof for the Existence of Inbetween Beings

They are, from his lips, who live on smells. Five taught. Proof too from the sutra on births.

[III.47-8]

स्त्री प्राप्त के प्र

Beings in the state between death and rebirth **are** something that exist, as we hear **from** the Victor's own **lips** in the sutra on *The Seven Types of Lives*, where it mentions "There are seven types of lives: life as a hell being," and so on.

यदःवरःश्रीदःस्रीदःस्री अर्देःयशा वात्रशःवाशुक्षः अर्देतः दुःश्रीदः त्रः अदेः अदयः दुः तुः

विक्राम्य प्रस्ति । विक्रम्य प्रस्ति । विक्राम्य प्रस्ति । विक्रम्य प्रस

Another sutra concurs:

If three conditions are present, a child will form in the mother's womb. These are (1) a being suitable to be a mother, and who is still menstruating; (2) a feeling of desire and then sexual contact between the prospective parents; and (3) the proximity of one of the beings who live on smells.

This proves the existence of the intermediate being first because it comes **from** the Buddha, and secondly because the phrase "beings **who live on smells**" in the quotation refers to none other than the intermediate being.

Proof of the intermediate being comes **too from the sutra** called *The Seven Births of the Holy,* where types that pass beyond during the intermediate state are further divided into those that pass quickly and so on.

17
The Bodies of Intermediate Beings

। ते. वे. वसेव. स. या हे या स्य है र । । क्रें व. ते श्र. यं है र . ते त्या श्र. हे वा । ते. वे. वक्षे चये. क्रें व. ते त्या है। । क्रें चये. क्रें व. वे. व्या स्व क्र क्र क्र हो।

Because the force projecting them's the same, He has the image of the being "before." This is the one that's after the moment of birth, Before the point that one has already died. [III.49-52]

यदः स्रेन् द्रया यद्धिमा स्वास्त्र स्वन्य स्वय स्वयः स्

What does the body of an inbetween being look like? The being between death and rebirth has the image of the being "before," or the being which is going to come into existence. This is because both the intermediate being and the being of the next life are thrown into the future by the same projecting force—the deeds they did in the past. This expression, the "being before," is meant to refer to the one that consists of the five (or four) heaps that exist before the point that one has already died (up through the moment of death) but after the moment of birth (the second moment of birth and so on).

र्यत्। ।याञ्चयाश्वास्त्राहिःक्षात् रत्युरःक्षेत्। त्रुयायवेषाश्चरःश्चरःश्चरः श्चरः श्चरः

What color is an intermediate being? An inbetween being headed for the hells has the color of a scorched stump of wood. Those to be animals are the color of smoke; craving spirits have a look like water. Those to become pleasure beings of the desire realm, or humans, possess a golden color. Inbetween beings for the form realm are white. No intermediate being exists for the formless realm, as there is no form there.

 शक्तर्रिं स्वायात्रित्र विद्यां वाचावर प्रत्य व्याप्त विद्या स्वायात्र विद्या विद्या

How big are intermediate beings? Those to become pleasure beings of the desire realm, or humans, are the size of five or six-year old children. Those headed for the form realm possess more of a sense of shame and conscience than not, so have the body of a mature adult and are fully clothed at birth. Those of the desire realm have a greater share of shamelessness and a lack of conscience, so are naked at their birth. There was though the nun known as "Lady of White," who was born with clothes by force of her former prayers to that effect. Bodhisattvas in their final life are as well from infancy possessed of the special bodily signs and marks, and clothing.

18 How Long Do You Stay in the Intermediate State?

"How long then," one may ask, "does a being stay in the intermediate state?" The Sutrist called the "Venerable Layman with Vows" makes the claim that "There is no fixed time: the intermediate being remains in this state until all the factors necessary for birth have come together." And the master Vasumitra claims that "they stay for a period of seven days. If by the end of this time they have failed to find a new birth, they die and migrate into yet another intermediate state." Still others claim that the intermediate being stays for seven weeks—a total of 49 days.

यर.भ.ट्रश.य.तीता.यावय.टी.भ्री.च्रर.र्ग यद्र.भ्रीय.भ.क्र्याया.ग्रीटा। ताया.ग्रीया.भ्रीय.ग्री.क्र्याया.यट्यायया.ट्रट्यायया.ट्रेर.भ्री। ट्रेर.भ्री. यायया.पर्यायया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याया.व्याय

The Detailists make another claim:

A being in the intermediate state is one in an active search for his rebirth, so his conception into a new birth occurs relatively quickly, before he has spent any great amount of time in this state. If his birth in a certain place is a fixed thing but the necessary factors have not yet assembled, the force of his past deeds will pull these factors together and he will take birth there. If his birth in the particular place is not a fixed thing, he will then simply take birth somewhere else.

Suppose too that it is winter and someone has reached an intermediate state from which he is supposed to take rebirth as a cow. Since cows mate in the summer, he will instead take birth as a similar animal without a definite mating season. If in winter also a person has come to an intermediate state from which he is meant to take birth as a horse, we will instead be born as a donkey—since donkeys mate in any season, but horses in spring.

रवर स्यान्त्रें अची पर श्रेर व्याप्त विकेष्य र्यो स्वाप्त विकेष्ट विकास स्थान स्वाप्त स्थान स्य

If again in summer a person has reached the state between death and rebirth and is supposed to be born as a bear, he will take birth as a *dre*-creature. They mate in no particular season, while bears mate only in the winter. If, finally, it is summer and a person has become an intermediate being meant to be born as a dog, he'll take his rebirth as a wolf: they mate any time, dogs only in autumn.

19 Other Features of Intermediate Beings

|शुः र्र्च्या-दे-दे-दे-वर्ष्। |र्यट-स्.भीय-क्ट-ब्र्याश-भटे-क्या |र्यश-भी-द्गै-क्ट्रिया-वियाश-रट-क्या |रुयाश-भवीय-क्षे-श्रीया-रया-तश-भव्ह्-।

Seen by the same type, with a clear god's eye. Miraculous feats from deeds, a special strength. All their powers complete, cannot be stopped. Never diverted, those ones live on smells.

[III.53-6]

"Who," one may ask, "can see an intermediate being?" Intermediate beings, at least those of **the same type**, can be **seen by** each other. Some people have claimed that intermediate beings headed for a birth as a pleasure being can see those for all the other types of beings, and that intermediate beings to be born as humans, craving spirits, animals, and hell-beings can each see all but the preceding types.

भ्रियान्नायाक्षेत्रत्ता मृत्यात्राभ्रीत्रायञ्चात्रियात्रस्य स्थात्रायात्रस्य स्थात्रात्ता स्थात्रात्ता स्थात्र याद्येयाःस्त्री इत्स्यात्ता स्थात्राभ्रीत्रायञ्चात्रेयात्त्रात्त्रायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थाय । भ्रितः स्थायः स्थ

स्यायान्त्राच्यान्त्रा वयाः क्षायाः वर्षः विद्याः स्वायाः वर्षः विद्याः स्वायाः वर्षः विद्याः स्वायाः वर्षः व

Intermediate beings can also be seen **by** using what is called the "eye of a god." It must be one which is **clear**, free of the eleven typical faults. These eleven are (1) doubt, (2) failing to direct one's attention properly, (3) improper physical states, (4) a feeling of dullness or sleepiness, (5) mental excitation, (6) an excessive application of effort, (7) vacant mental wandering, (8) anxiety, (9) too many different ideas, (10) talking too much, and (11) trying too hard to meditate.

दर्शैर प्राप्ति । प्रेट्ट प्रेम में प्राप्ति । प्रेट प्रेम में प्राप्ति । प्रेट प्राप्ति । प्रेट प्रेम में प्राप्ति । प्रेट प्रेम में प्राप्ति । प्राप्ति ।

Intermediate beings have a capability to perform **miraculous feats** that comes **through** the power of **deeds**. They can fly through the sky, and display **a special strength**, or capacity to travel at extraordinary speeds. **All their powers**, those of the eye and the rest, are **complete**—and they have the ability to pass through mountains and so forth **without being stopped**. Evidence of this fact is the presence of frogs and other types of creatures found in the middle of rocks with no openings at all.

र्वित्वान्त्राय्याः वित्वान्त्रायः वित्वान्त्रायः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्व वित्वान्त्रायः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्यान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्रान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्रान्त्राः वित्वान्त्रान्त्राः वित्वान्त्राः वित्वान्त्रात्राः वित्वान्त्रात्रान्त्राः वित्वान्त्यः वित्वान्त्रात्रात्रान्त्रात्रात्रात्वान्त्रात्रात्वान्त्रात्या

"Is it then possible," one may ask, "for a person to be diverted to another type of birth after he has already taken form as an intermediate being headed for the hells?" You are **never diverted** to another birth: the energy of one's past deeds which is throwing forth the intermediate being headed for the hells is the same energy that will project the being "before"—that is, the hell being itself.

One can however reach the state of an intermediate being headed for the level known as "Class of the Pure" and still not have to take birth there: cases where one achieves nirvana between death and rebirth, as just such a being, do exist.

दर्भ नद्री । दे.लट. रेचट.कु.च. स्थल. दे.बु. सा. रे.बु. स्थल. दे.श्रे. स्थल. स्थल. दे.श्रे. स्थल. स्या. स्थल. स्या. स्थल. स्या. स्थल. स्थल.

One may ask whether intermediate beings of the desire realm eat any physical types of food. It is stated that **those ones** eat no gross kinds of physical food, but rather **live on** mere **smells**. And the more powerful consume the good smells, while the less powerful must eat the poor ones.

20
How Intermediate Beings Find Birth

Because of a mistaken impression he passes To his destination to play, to enjoy; Others from attraction to smells or the place. Those for the hells are upside-down.

[III.57-60]

ग्री-त-र्नेन्न्ने म्यून्य स्थायह्म स्थायह्म स्थायह्म स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्थायः स्था

"How does an intermediate being," one may begin, "enter his particular state of birth?" If he is an inbetween being headed for a birth as a human, he sees his parents from a distance, having sex together. Because of a mistaken impression, and imagining that he can play and enjoy himself, he passes to his destination within the womb, lodged in the midst of the mother's abdomen and entrails.

द्वामं । अप्तर्भः क्षेत्राच्येत्र त्यात्र त्यात्य त्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य त्यात्य

If the child is to be a boy, it lies crouched up on the right side of the mother's abdomen, facing her back. If it is to be a girl, the child lies to the left side of the abdomen, facing the front. A child to be born as a neuter lies in either position, depending on whether masculine or feminine types of desire dominate his personality.

स्वार्धित स्वार्य स्वार्धित स्वार्धित स्वार्धित स्वार्धित स्वार्धित स्वार्ध

As for the **other** types of intermediate beings, those headed for a birth from warmth and moisture pass to their destination **from an attraction for the smells** there. Those to be born complete come to their destination **from an attraction for the place** itself.

Someone might object: "How could anyone be attracted to the hells?" Yet they are—all based on a mistaken impression.

ताः श्रीर त्यों त्यतः द्वीत्रश्राहे त्या श्रीतः त्या हु त्या प्राप्तः त्या विकार त्या विकार व्यों त्या विकार विवयः है त्या विकार विवयः वि

वर्गेर। बिश्रायोशीरश्रातपुःस्रीर।

What does an intermediate being look like as he travels to his goal? **Those** headed **for the hells** travel **upside-down.** As sutra states,

Those who berate the saints—accomplished ones With vows unstained and mighty asceticisms—Can only fall, travelling down into the hells, Passing with bodies upside-down.

र्योत्र से स्थान्य स्

It is stated that intermediate beings to be born as pleasure beings travel along in an upward direction. All of the others, those to be humans and the rest, travel on a level plane. The master Purnavardhana states that inbetween beings headed for a birth as a craving spirit go along like craving spirits themselves, facing backwards.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Six: Death and the Realms of Existence, Part Two

The following selection is taken from the Illumination of the Path to Freedom, a commentary by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, on the Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha), written by the Buddhist master Vasubandhu in the fourth century AD. Master Vasubandhu's root text verses do not appear in the original of the commentary, and have been inserted at the appropriate points. Parts of these verses woven into the commentary have been printed in bold to show the close connection of the two works, and section headings have been provided for clarity.

21 The Various Kinds of Sustenance

বির্বাবি: একা শূরী কা বার্কা বা ভারি।

Beings are kept alive by sustenance.

[III.152]

विश्वाम्बर्धान्यस्य स्वित्ता विश्वाम्य स्वित्ता स्वित्ता

"What," one may ask, "keeps beings alive in these three realms?" **Beings are kept alive by sustenance**, for as sutra states:

Not long after the Teacher had become enlightened, he gave voice to a certain teaching, to the effect that beings are kept alive by sustenance.

|प्रस्ति क्षेत्र क्षे

Solid food exists in the desire; Combination of three of the doors of sense. The door of sense that's form is not, because It neither aids its power nor the free.

[III.153-6]

ग्री:बर्श्या वर्षे.य:बर्श्यीरावर्षातात्र्या । विद्यायवर्षा वर्षात्रः वर्षा द्याः विद्यायवर्षः वर्षा वर्षाः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षः वर्

"In the lines above," one may begin, "you mentioned that `beings are kept alive by sustenance.' Just how many kinds of sustenance are there?" There are four different kinds: sustenance in the form of solid food, contact, mental movement, and consciousness.

यश्चित्रःश्ची

बश्चित्रःश्ची

वश्चित्रःश्ची

वश्चित्यःश्ची

वश्चित्रःश्ची

वश्चि

"In what realms are they found?" one may ask. Solid food exists in the desire realm, but not in the realms above it, for it is just those beings who have freed themselves of desire for solid food who are born in these upper realms.

Someone may ask how there can be any solid food in the great hells. And yet there is, for it is said that flaming iron balls and molten copper are forced into the mouths of the beings living in these hells. Moreover we can understand from the accounts of Gendun Sung and Shrona that in the partial and adjacent hells there are kinds of food resembling those of the human realm.

Some may object that this explanation seems to contradict the following words of the *Treatise*:

What is solid food? Any portion of a substance which, when used as food, nurtures the various powers, and supports and promotes the development of the major elements of the body.

Yet there is no contradiction. This explanation was given only with reference to food as part of a nurturing process; iron balls or the like can be said to satisfy the definition of food in that they do exhibit the ability to remove a feeling of hunger.

।ইবা'বহর':এমহা'ব'রুম'ঐহ''' ।এবা'বহর':এম'অই'''

Contact, mental movement, and consciousness With stain are sustenance.

[III.157-8a]

र्या.तयु.चन्ना.यु.स्याना.यु.स्या.यु.स्या.यु.स्या.यु.स्या.यु.स्या.यु.चन्या.यु.स्य.यु.स्य

यः मुद्देन देन देन स्था स्थान स्थान

"You have mentioned," one may begin, "sustenance consisting of contact, and so on. Just what is the nature of each of these types of sustenance?" **Contact, mental movement, and consciousness** that come **with stain are** each a kind of **sustenance**. In their unstained form they can't be called sustenance, for sustenance is defined by its function of perpetuating this suffering life, whereas the stainless act to bring it to a stop. As sutra says,

It functions to keep alive those beings who have already come out, and to nourish them; it functions to provide aid to those still in the state of seeking their next life.

|बेश्याम्बर्धर्वाया =मास्येर्द्रिस्याये स्वेर्द्रेत्र्याये स्वेर्द्रेत्र्याये स्वेर्द्रेत्र्ये । व्यास्येर्द्रे

The four types of sustenance are the very root of sickness, cancer, agony. They help bring about old age and death.

Stainless things could hardly be described this way.

It also states,

22 The Realms of Hell

वित्रे वित्राः क्षेत्रः स्वाः क्षेः शुः का । स्वत्रः स्वेतः स्वेतः त्रेः स्वाः क्षेर । त्रेः स्वेतः स्वेतः स्वाः क्षेरः शुः का

Twenty thousand deep beneath of us, That of No Respite, just the same. Seven are the hells atop of it.

[III.231-3]

Twenty thousand yojana **deep** [about 90,000 miles] **beneath of us** here on Dzambu Continent lies the ceiling of the hell known as **No Respite.** Its height and depth are **just the same:** twenty thousand yojana each. The hell is known as "No Respite" because the beings living there experience unlimited sufferings without the slightest interruption. Some have claimed that "No Respite" [Skt: $av\bar{\imath}$ ci] takes its name from the fact that there is no [Skt: a] occurrence of pleasure [Skt: $v\bar{\imath}$] here.

|देवे:ब्रेट:बर्न्य्यायायत्वरः व्यंद्राचे प्रवः र्व्यंत्रः व्यंत्रः व्यंत्यः व्यंत्यः व्यंत्रः व्यंत्रः व्यंत्रः व्यंत्य

Seven are the hells atop of No Respite:

1) "Revive," so called because the beings living here strike each other with various weapons until they all lie still as death. Then a voice comes from the sky, commanding them to "Revive!" This makes them rise and start all over again.

युर्यायाः भ्रेयाः द्वार्याः द्वार्याः व्यायः स्थ्यः स्थयः स्यः स्थयः स्थय

2) In the hell called "Lines of Black," hellguards first cover beings' bodies with black lines and then use various kinds of blades to slice them open along these lines.

२८८० सुरम्भरागुमानसूमाविदावहँसमायमानुतावसूमावहँसावहँसमाद्रा

3) The hellguards in "Gather and Smash" gather the beings here together and smash them to a pulp.

क्षःचदुःसूयाःचस्ताग्रीशःभेतःवशःक्षःदःवर्चयशःसशःदुःवर्चरःदरः।

4) "Screaming" hell is named from the shrieks of pain by the beings there, seared by heat.

दे.चर्याग्रीट.र्ज्यां चर्चताः क्रांच्याः क्रांच्यां व्याप्तां द्रियाः व्याप्तां व्यापतां व्यापतं व्यापतां व्यापतां व्यापतं

5) In the "Great Screaming Hell," the heat that burns those living there is much greater, their screams of pain more horrible too.

अवाकाग्री, विद्यात्रा स्वयः वदुः वदः र्यः वदुः श्रृवा वश्वयः श्रृदः वकावः कः वः प्रदः।

6) The next hell is simply "Heat," named from the fact that its inhabitants burn stuffed in red-hot iron chambers.

दे.चम्भाग्रीट.मु.चर्च्चर.चर्च.क्रमा.चर्च्या.स्.चेम्भात्याद.च.दट.क्रेम.चयाद.वर्ट.क्र्या.चर्च्या.चर्च्या.स्.चेम्भ

7) Those of the next hell, "Superheat," roast in an even more unbearable heat, jammed in ceramic chambers of single or double walls.

The Adjacent Hells

|दी:र्या:यी:वी:देश:यिव:वी:वा |श्री:योदी:यश:श्रीयाश:द्रीय |श्रु:योदी:यश:श्रीयाश:कु:यी:येश |यक्किर:ये:योदी:यश:येय|श्रीय

Sixteen extra with the entire eight,
Standing at their four individual quarters:
Hells by the name of Embers and Corpse Rot,
Razor Road and the rest, the River as well.

[III.234-7]

यः नशुवा पवे कें वि नु श्वा वि से श्वी स्व वि से श्वी स्व वि से श्वी से से

Sixteen extra, adjacent hells come with each of the entire eight, standing around them in a circular arrangement. At each of their four individual quarters we find then first a hell by the name of Embers. These embers reach up to one's knees: when he sets his foot down, all the flesh and bone of his leg are burned away. When he raises his foot again, it all grows back.

यहेयात्त्र,याञ्च स्त्रात्त्र, व्या हेत्य, व्याप्त स्त्रात्त्र स्त्र स्त

Next is the **Corpse Rot**, a swamp hell of rotten corpses. You sink down to your waist and out come creatures called Sharpbeaks, with white bodies and black heads, to spear your body. Right up against the Swamp is the **Razor**-Studded **Road**, where again the flesh and bone of your feet are sliced away as you set your feet down, constantly regenerating as you raise them again.

स्वाबागी:अके पाउदावीका स्वाबाद्या स्वावाद्या स्वावाद्य

"The rest" refers first to the Forest of Swords, where the leaves of the trees are actually swords. A breeze blows through the forest and stirs the sword-leaves, which fall and lacerate your body. Great speckled dogs live in the forest and attack, tearing the flesh away with fangs of iron. Terror drives you to the Wood of Shalmali.

न्यवाः र्यन्तुः स्वायेः वयाः स्वायेः स्वायः स्व

त्रुबायम् चीत्रक्ष्यः स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य क्षेत्रः स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम् विद्यान्य स्ट्रिम्य

The *shalmali* are huge trees with trunks many miles in height, covered with spines some sixteen inches long. As you climb a tree to escape the dogs, its spines point downwards and stick into your body. When you reach the top, ravens with steel beaks are waiting to pluck your eyeballs away from the sockets. In desperation you begin to climb back down, only now the spikes turn their points upward to spear your body again.

वयास्त्रम्भः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्य व्यास्त्रम्भः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्य व्यास्त्रम्भः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान्यक्ष्याः स्थान

Last comes the River Uncrossable, filled with burning ashes and almost impossible to pass. Now the three hells of the previous paragraphs are counted only as one because the instruments of torture in each of them are of the same general type. The dogs and ravens are considered characteristics of the Forest of Swords and the Shalmali Wood.

१८श्चायोः योर्ट्रायः उद्यायिदः हैयः दश्चायः श्वायः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः विद्रायः प्रद्यायः विद्रायः विद्

In front of these hells stand the hellguards of the Lord of Death, weapons in hand to stop any of the hellbeings from running somewhere else. One may ask whether these guards are a kind of living being or not. The Sutrists claim that they are not, that they are merely constructs of the elements and their derivatives, like mountains that resemble the head of a goat or sheep.

श्रुवःत्र्रःश्रुः तरः द्यीर। विश्वः यत्रिः तः दृतः तयातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः त्यातः विश्वः विश्वः

Some might say that this explanation seems to contradict a verse from the venerable Dharmika Subhuti:

Those who delight in anger, cruelty, Those who find their pleasure in bad deeds, Those who love to see some suffering,

Take their births as demons of Lord Death.

त्रश्चात्रात्यात्रात् । द्रान्नेत्रात्वेनः ह्राक्ष्यात्रात्वेनः स्त्रात्वेनः स्त्र

And yet it does not. Here the expression "demons of Lord Death" is meant to refer only to those craving spirits who act as attendants to the Lord of All Things, the Lord of Death, and whose job it is to lead beings to their places in the hells.

योर्च्र-ताश्चा-वर्ष्यान्त्र-ताश्चा-वर्ष्यान्त्र-ताश्चा-वर्ष्यान्त्र-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्चा-वर्ष्य-ताश्च-वर्ष्य-ताश्च-वर्ष्य-ताश्च-वर्ष-ताश्च-त

The Detailists on their part claim that the hellguards are a kind of living being, and that after their deaths they take birth as hellbeings themselves, this being the ripened result of their having done such harm to the beings in the hells. They say the reason why the guards themselves are left unharmed by the hellfires and so on is that their past deeds prevent it.

। सु: तुर: उद: श्रेयाश : युर: यकुर: याल्दा

The other eight, cold, starting with Blisters. [III.238]

क्र-प्राथाताक्ष्रकाकीत्रीया क्रियात्त्राचीया क्रियात्वाचीयात्त्राचीयात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायाय्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्रच

There are **eight** more hells, **other** than the hot ones. These are the **cold** hells, and they **start with** the hell called **Blisters**. The names of the eight are Blisters, Blisters Bursting, Chattering, Moaning in Cold, Screaming in Cold, Splitting Open like a Blue Lotus, Splitting Open like a Red Lotus, and Breaking Wide Open like a Red Lotus.

द्यम् त्युति स्पूर्या मुर्मिर विषया क्रीत्य स्थित । स्थित स

One might ask how all these different hells, No Respite and the rest, could ever fit under this one continent. And yet they do, for the continents are all much wider at the base, shaped like a pile of grain.

ह्र्याकानुद्दे स्वायान्य स्वयान्य स्वायान्य स्वायान्य स्वयान्य स्वयाय स्वयाय

Now the principal habitat for animals is supplied by the Great Outer Sea: their numbers here are great, their suffering limitless. Those that live in the lands of men and pleasure beings are spread all over, with no one particular location. The main place for craving spirits lies beneath the area of Rajagirha here on our continent, some five hundred yojana [about 2,250 miles] deep. Here lives

the Lord of Death, known also as the Lord of All Things. He has the body of a craving spirit, for the past deeds that have thrown him into this place were non-virtuous. The deeds that determined the finishing details of his life, though, were virtuous—so he enjoys a kind of eminence, like one of the greater pleasure beings.

His job is to inform beings who are headed for the hells, those who are ignorant of why they must go there, just what they did to deserve such a birth. He is attended by some thirty-six types of craving spirits. These spirits may, in general, be divided into three different groups: those with outer obstacles, those with inner obstacles, and those with obstacles in the very nature of what they try to eat or drink. Such spirits who live in the lands of men or pleasure beings have no particular place, and are found throughout these areas.

यानुकार्या । प्रत्यंत्रा यान्याक्षेत्रायाः स्वीत्रायाः कार्याः कार्याः कार्याः कार्याः विकार्यः विकार

Having thus discussed places where beings in the births of misery live, we turn to the locations of those in the higher births. Since we have already described the places where humans live, we begin with the lands of the pleasure beings. These fall into two types: those actually related to an area of solid ground, and those not so related. In the first category fall the lands of those in the class of the Four Great Kings, as well as those of the Thirty-Three. Pleasure beings in the class of the Four Great Kings may themselves be divided into those of the mansions, and those of the mountains.

23
The Eon of Destruction

|¬₦₼.₼.₤₦.₼.₦८.₼₲८.₼|

Many different types of eons are taught. [III.358]

तयुःसुर।

पञ्चार्यायः पञ्चायः प्राप्तः पञ्चायः पञ्

By way of introduction, we may say that **many different types of eons are taught.** These include the eon of destruction, the eon of formation, the eon of continuation, and the great eon.

Our detailed treatment of eons covers four topics, which correspond to the four different types of eons just mentioned.

|युद्या:यदे:यञ्जव:य:र्युव:य:थे| |युद्य:य:येद:यञ्जव:य:र्युद:वर:य|

An eon of destruction from the point Of no more hell births to the vessel's end. [III.359-60]

र्यामा विभाग प्रमाण विभाग विभ

"In the line above," one may begin, "you mentioned that `many different types of eons are taught.' Can you now describe the `eon of destruction' and other kinds of eons?" An "eon of destruction" starts from the point of where there are no more beings taking births in the hell called "No Respite." And it lasts up to the point where that great vessel, the outer world, has come to its end.

भग्रें श्राम् सम्मानुष्य अभ्या विषय । विषय

Four different events then occur simultaneously: (1) the discontinuation of all births by living beings into the hell of No Respite; (2) the increase of lifespans among humans of Dzambu Continent up to eighty thousand years in length; (3) the close of the eon of continuation, and (4) the opening of the eon of destruction.

तत्रः द्वः स्वरः स्वरः

At this stage all the beings living in the hell of No Respite come to the end of their lives—they die and move on. And even those who have collected new karma that would normally bring them a rebirth in this same hell take their birth instead in the hell on another planet. The same process follows for the beings in the other hells, as well as for the animals and craving spirits living in the depths of the seas. And the same thing happens, at the same time, with the animals and craving spirits living in the lands of pleasure beings and humans.

है'नश्रम्यहर्म् स्त्रिम् स्तिम् स्त्रिम् स्तिम् स्

At this point one of the human beings living on Dzambu Continent automatically attains the first concentration level. When he comes back out of it, he exclaims: "Wonders! The bliss and pleasure that come from this deep solitude are truly happiness!" Other inhabitants of the continent hear these words, and then attain the first concentration level which is achieved automatically. Subsequently they all take birth at the same level.

यश द्वीःश्वःत्वः स्त्रः श्चीःश्वः त्यः प्रदेशः श्चीःशः व्यायः द्वीः स्त्रः स्त

The very same process then occurs, in respective order, with the inhabitants of the eastern continent and those of the continent to the west—Cattle Users. The beings who live on the northern continent of Terrible Sound though possess a special obstruction that has ripened from their past deeds, and are completely incapable of ridding themselves of attachment for the kind of life they have. Thus the process for them is that they first take rebirth as pleasure beings of the desire realm.

यदिन स्वीत्र मिल्या प्रति स्वात्र का स्वीत्र स्वात्र स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य स्वात्य

The six classes of desire-realm pleasure beings each then go through the same process, one by one. One of them attains the first concentration level automatically. When he comes out of it, he exclaims: "Wonders! The bliss and pleasure that come from this deep solitude are truly happiness!" Again the others hear about it, and reach themselves the first concentration level achieved through an automatic process. This leads them to take a birth into the level known as "Class of the Pure."

न्यस्य प्रमानिक निर्देश प्रमानिक क्षेत्र में प्रमानिक क्षेत्र मिल्य प्रमानिक प्रम प्रमानिक प

Next one of the beings residing at the first concentration level achieves the second concentration level, again through an automatic process. He comes out of it and exclaims, "Wonders! The bliss and pleasure that come from single-

pointed concentration are truly happiness!" Still again the others hear about it, and reach themselves the second concentration level achieved by an automatic process. This brings about their birth at this second level.

र्टा होट गा देशका श्रीका स्ट्रा त्या हो । हे त्या प्राप्त स्या व्या क्ष्या क्

The events described above go on for some nineteen intermediate eons. At this point the great pleasure beings begin to stop sending rain at its proper time; all the vegetation and forests of Dzambu Continent dry up and die. After an extremely long period of time, a second sun rises in the sky, creating tremendous heat. All the lesser bodies of water and small ponds turn dry.

श्चरीयः त्राच्या शुःश्चे योद्धयाः पृःत्वयः विदःश्चेयाः परः वर्ण्युः । दशःश्चेरः प्रवेरः दशः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः अर्थः प्रवेरः प्र

This leads to the rising of a third sun, which causes all the streams and rivers to evaporate. A fourth sun rises, and even the huge Lake Neverwarm disappears. Then comes the fifth sun, drying the Great Outer Sea as well. With the rising of a sixth sun, the four continents and Mount Supreme dissolve in a cloud of smoke. Finally a seventh sun comes up, engulfing the world in a single flame, destroying it in fire.

देशःमुद्रान्यस्य प्रमान्यस्य प्रम्यस्य प्रमान्यस्य प्

This fire then triggers a parallel fire in the first concentration level. The mansions of this first level, empty of inhabitants by this time, are burned completely. It is not actually the fire in the desire realm that burns down the mansions here, for they are separate levels.

These last events require a single intermediate eon, which means that the destruction of the world takes a total of twenty intermediate eons. The above description, by the way, pertains to the destruction of a world by fire. In cases where the planet is destroyed by water, beings living at the second concentration level attain the third level of concentration by an automatic process. This leads to their subsequent birth at the third level. In an instance where the world is, finally, destroyed by wind, inhabitants of this third level reach the fourth concentration level by an automatic process and then take birth there.

24
The Eon of Formation

|तक्रम्बायायदेः श्रीतः प्रदेश्यमः तुर्वे।

That of the formation begins from the first Wind, on up to a birth within the hells.

[III.361-2]

दर येते सुर वह अ तुः सूर वा त्र अ व व त्र अ है अ दर से र यदे र सुव व त्र से र य व र से र य व र यो र य व र यो र

यद्ग्य-स्थ्रात्रक्याश्वात्रः श्वात्रात्रः श्वात्रात्रः स्थ्रात्र्यः क्ष्यात्र्यः क्ष्यात्रः स्थ्रात्र्यः स्थ्यात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्यात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्यः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्यः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्रः स्थयात्यः स्थयः स्थय

Now an **eon of formation begins from** the rising of **the first** gentle **wind on up to** the **birth** of a single living being **within the hell** of No Respite. At the very beginning, space is completely empty—then a gentle wind rises, a portent of the formation of a new planet. The force of this wind alone would never be enough to create that great vessel, the outer world—although the levels from Class of the Pure down to Free of Conflict do take shape.

यायर प्रमेखायाद्या र्गोयाय्य्र स्थासुमाद्धार्म प्रमासुमायदे प्रमास्य प्रमास्य प्रमास्य द्यायाद्वार्म प्रमास्य प्रमास्य

This same wind from before then gathers strength over a period of a great many years, until all the parts of the world from the foundation disc of wind up to the land of the Thirty-Three have formed, one by one, working up from the bottom. All these different events require one entire intermediate eon.

क्ष्यात्रेत्रम्यत्ये स्त्रीत्र। देवस्य वहस्य तुः त्रीत्य प्रत्य प्रस्य प्रस्य स्त्रिया । क्ष्य स्त्रिय प्रस्य प्र

Next there is a certain being who was living at the level of Clear Light, and whose life, merit, and power of past deeds have all run out. He takes a rebirth into the empty mansion of the Pure One; for it is the nature of things, that what was destroyed last is the first to take form. Then come all the other inhabitants of the world, one by one, up to those of Dzambu Continent.

नम्याप्तुः स्वाप्त्या ने क्षाः स्वमः स्वेतः द्वार्षे । ने क्षाः स्वमः स्वेतः स्वेतः स्वमः स्वतः स्वयः स्

These first human beings to dwell on Dzambu Continent are born instantaneously, all complete. For food they need nothing but the feeling of bliss, and their bodies shine with a radiant light. They have miraculous powers that allow them to fly in the sky, and live for an "inestimable" number of years. This entire process, up to the point where a single living being takes birth into the hell of No Respite, requires some nineteen intermediate eons.

। देवः क्षेः क्षं त्यां द्या अवस्था विष्या विषयः स्वर्थः स्वर्धः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर

Four different events then occur simultaneously: (1) a drop in the lifespan from a "inestimable" number to eighty thousand years; (2) the birth of any single being into the hell of No Respite; (3) the close of the formation eon; and (4) the opening of the eon of continuation.

25 The Eon of Continuation

निर्मेश्वर्ययम्वर्ययम्यत्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्मेश्वर्म

Intermediate eon from an "inestimable"
Down to when the spans of life are ten;
Eighteen other eons after that,
Each an increase followed by decrease;
Last of all is one which is an increase,
Up until they're eighty thousand long.

[III.363-8]

न्याक्रिक्तिन्त्र्री विराम्भियायार्थित्यः विरामित्र्यात्र्री क्रिक्तिन्त्र्री क्रिक्तिन्त्र्री क्रिक्तिन्त्र्री क्रिक्तिन्त्र विरामित्र विरामित्य

Now the length of an eon of continuation is twenty intermediate eons, with the length of each intermediate eon figured as follows. One such eon consists of the period during which average lifespans drop from an "inestimable" number of years down to when the spans of life are only ten years. There are eighteen other intermediate eons after that, each consisting of an increase in lifespans up to eighty thousand years followed by a decrease back to ten. Last of all is one intermediate eon which is another increase alone. How far is the increase? Up until they're eighty thousand long.

देशकाश्चिरः तर त्यूं त्वतः हीर। वर त्युं राय वर्षे वर्षे हें वर्षे वर्ष

One may make the following objection: "According to you then, the first and final members of any such set of twenty intermediate eons represent only half a curve apiece—whereas each of the eighteen between consist of full curves. Wouldn't this imply a difference in the lengths of these different eons?" It does not, for the first and final ones move along their half curves relatively slower, while the eons in between these two move along their full curves relatively faster.

26
The Appearance of a Buddha

|न्रमु:धे:वर्ष:क्रेर्यक्ष्य:य:क्ष्र्य| |व्रुट्:द्र:सर:क्रे:वर्ष्येव:य:खे| |व्रुट:द्र:सर:क्रे:वर्ष्येव:य:खे|

The occurrence of a Buddha, for three countless Of these. They make their appearance during The drop that goes down 'til a hundred is reached.

[III.374-6]

One may begin with the following question: "It is explained that Buddhas come from the act of accumulating merit and wisdom for a period of three `countless' eons. Just what type of eons are referred to here?" A Buddha occurs from the act of accumulating merit and wisdom for a period of three "countless" numbers of these great eons.

योड्या.ज.योटम.भुर.टी.यहंट.तडु.हीर। तथ.योटम.भुर.टी.यवट.त.भुर.ग्री. योटम.ग्री.योषम्य.योषिष.टीयो.छेटु.सबटु.योटम. ।योटम.भुर.दी.योशिम.टी.ययोज.खे.यो भुष्टिम.

Some may object that it is a contradiction of terms to speak of "three" that are "countless." And yet it is not. Here we are not talking about the "countless" that refers to something that is beyond numbers. Rather, what we call a "countless" is the name of a specific number, the highest of our numbers with separate names, corresponding to ten to the sixtieth power.

पश्चरायायदीरवायश्चरायाचरायाः श्चेत्रास्यायाः विद्यास्यायाः विद्यास्यायाः विद्यास्यायाः विद्यास्यायाः विद्यास्य

ঘর্ষার্শার্ম র্থ্র অক্ষা

Now the present eon is also known as the "Eon of Good Fortune," the "Eon of Light." As the *Holy Teaching of the White Lotus* states,

During the formation of the world, a thousand lotus blossoms of gold with a thousand petals each appear within the great disc of water. They pique the curiosity of the pleasure beings of the Pure Places, who investigate the phenomenon and come to learn that it portends the appearance of a thousand Buddhas. "Wonders!" they proclaim, "a thousand different Buddhas are to come—this eon is truly an eon of good fortune!" Thus it is that everyone calls this time the "Eon of Good Fortune."

तःबन्ना कु.ज्.चमै.तदु.चर.ज.न्नट्नाःमैन.ट्रेट्याःवर्वेटःजा क्षमन्नत्त्र्यःचःताःभ्रैंःवेन्नाक्ष्टःचदुःद्वेरा चमैट्राम्चःबन्नान्नःनदुःभ्रम्,श्र्माः विन्नःबन्नामेन्द्रःवर्वेटःबा लर.वत्त्रज्ञाम्,श्रमःवर्वेटःक्षी ट्रेदःक्र्रम्नान्त्रः

One may ask just when it is that Buddhas like this appear. They never come while the average lifespan is rising, for during this period beings feel less disgust with the circle of life. Rather, they—these Buddhas—make their appearance during the time that starts from the drop of lifespans from eighty thousand years, and which continues as they go down, until a hundred years is reached.

निस्त्र-कर्-तु-स्रो क्रीम् । क्रीम् स्यायाः स्यायः प्रदान्ति । स्रोम् । स्रोम । स्रोम

Buddhas do not appear subsequent to this period, as lifespans are decreasing even further. Since the five degenerations have spread fairly widely by this time, beings then are no fit vessels to receive the teachings.

27 The Contemplation on Death

The following selections are taken from the Great Book on the Steps of the Path (Lamrim Chenmo), by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

श्रीट्याद्या श्रीकार्यः क्रेक्याद्यः त्यायात्यात्यात्यः श्रीट्याद्याः विष्यात्यः श्रीट्याद्यः विष्यायः स्त्रीयः विष्यायः विष्यायः स्त्रीयः विष्यायः स्त्रीयः विष्यायः विषयः विष्यायः विष्यायः विषयः विषय

The second part, the instruction on how to get the very essence out of life, includes three different sections: the teaching on how to train one's mind in the steps of the path that are shared with those of lesser scope; the teaching on how to train one's mind in the steps of the path that are shared with those of medium scope; and the teaching on how to train one's mind in the steps of the path for those of greater scope.

मुःस्यायाम्बर्धा क्रान्त्रियाः प्रकारितः स्त्रीः स्त्रान्त्रात्त्रेयाः प्रकारान्त्रेत्रः प्रक्रियाः प्रकार्याः स्त्रान्त्रेत्रः प्रक्रियाः प्रकार्याः स्त्रान्त्रेत्रः प्रक्रियाः प्रकार्याः स्त्रान्त्रेत्रः प्रक्रियाः प्रकाराः स्त्रीयः प्रकार्यः स्त्रान्त्रेत्रः प्रक्रियः प्रकार्यः स्त्रीयः प्रकार्यः स्त्रीयः प्रकाराः स्तरः स्त्रीयः प्रकाराः स्त्रीयः प्रकारः स्त्रीयः प्रकाराः स्त्रीयः प्रकाराः स्त्रीयः प्रकाराः स्त्रीयः स्त्

The first of these three sections has three divisions of its own: the actual teaching for training one's mind in the attitude of a person of lesser scope; how to know when you have succeeded in reaching this attitude; and clearing up some misconceptions about the attitude. The first of these divisions has two parts: learning to develop the attitude of focusing on the life hereafter; and learning to make use of the various ways of achieving happiness in these future lives.

|८८.मू.जा.चाकुर्था वहुवा.हेब.वहुर.दहुर.हुर.वज्ञुर.व.वज्ञू.व.वहुर्थ.कु.चहुर्थ.वहुर.वहुर्य.

বশ্বম:ঘর্টা

We will cover the subject of focusing on the life after death in two stages. The first is the contemplation of how to maintain an awareness of death; that is, the fact that we have not long to stay in this present world. The second is the contemplation of the relative happiness and pain of the two broad categories of living beings; that is, the question of what will happen to us when we reach our future life.

र्जा पक्षे पक्षे पक्षे प्रति हो स्वाप्त स्वर्धे स्वर्थ प्रति पक्षे प्रति पक्षे स्वर्थ प्रति प्रति प्रति प्रति स्वर्थ स्वर्थ प्रति स्वर्थ प्रति स्वर्थ प्रति स्वर्थ प्रति स्वर्थ प्रति स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्

There are four steps to the contemplation of death. These are:

- 1) Considering the problems of not meditating on death.
- 2) Considering the benefits of meditating on death.
- 3) Identifying just what kind of death awareness we seek to develop.
- 4) How to meditate and develop this awareness of death.

प्रमुरःर्भे रेख्ररःर्भायरेक्षेत्रः भ्रेटः भ्रेत्येष्ठः स्थित्रः स्थितः स्यतः स्थितः स्यतः स्थितः स्

Here is the first of the four. Above we spoke of getting the very essence out of this life, where now you have a whole range spiritual opportunities. The one thing that could damage your ability to do so, from the very beginning, is the first of what we call the "four misconceptions." This is the misconception where you grasp to impermanent things as being permanent.

१२.ज.स.म्यासायक्षेत्राज्यस्य स्वासायद्वः स्वासायक्षः यात्राक्षः व्यक्षः विववः विवः विववः व

इस्रान् द्वें वाक्षेत्रके प्रति विष्या विषय के त्रिया के त्रिया के त्रिया के त्रिया के त्रिया के त्रिया के त्र

There are two versions to this wrong idea. One is more subtle, and one is more gross. The one that could damage your practice is the grosser one, where you look upon your own impermanence, your own mortality, and imagine for some reason that you are *not* going to die.

Now it is true that in your life up to now you have had some awareness that eventually you would have to die. Everybody has this kind of death awareness. But at the same time you tend to be of the opinion that you won't die, because with every day that passes you say to yourself, "It won't be today, today is not the day that I will die." And you keep this attitude all the way up to the moment of your death.

नितः प्राष्ट्रेन् स्त्रीत्राक्ष्या क्ष्या क

Suppose you let this kind of attitude go on, suppose you fail to apply the spiritual antidotes that would stop these sorts of thoughts. The thoughts then create a kind of spiritual blindness: you begin to get the idea that you are going to be able to stay here in this life, and then you start to obsess on this life. All you can concentrate on then is how to get what you want, and how to escape what you don't want, in this life. Your life becomes, "Today I need this, and this, and next this."

And then even if—by some remote chance—you do engage in spiritual activities like learning, or contemplation, or meditation, they all become something you are doing only for this life. Whatever good deeds you do this way are of very little strength. And because they are then typically connected

with some bad deed, some breaking of morality or transgression of a vow, it is quite unusual to find any good activities of this type that are not interlaced with the very causes that would take you to one of the births of misery.

कुष्रास्था क्ष्या प्रविष्ठ प्राप्त स्था प्रविष्ठ प्राप्त स्था प्रविष्ठ प्राप्त स्था प्रविष्ठ प्राप्त स्था प्रविष्ठ प्राप्त प्रविष्ठ प्रविष्

Suppose even that you do decide to do something for your future life. Without this awareness of death you find yourself unable to stop the kind of laziness where you put your practice off, where you say to yourself, "I'll get to it later, I'll do all these things eventually, one at a time." You begin to pass the time of your life with all kinds of distractions: with sleep, or lazing around, or wasted talk, or food or drink, or the like. You won't be able to reach a point where the practice that you do has any great energy behind it.

द्या. त्. क्षेत्र क्ष

This kind of hope that you will be able to live for a long time deceives you. You start to have strong attachment to gain, to being honored by other people, and the like. You begin to feel a strong dislike for anything that prevents you, or anything that you think might prevent you, from having these things. There grows in you a dark ignorance that cannot understand the problems these thoughts then give you.

These lead to a steady torrent of mental afflictions, strong ones, and all the different varieties of them, major and minor: pride, and jealousy, and all the rest.

द्वा तक्षः चावतः क्षेत्रः विवा विद्वा विद्व

These afflictions in turn lead you to harmful deeds done in your acts, your words, and your thoughts: deeds like the ten non-virtues, and the five "immediate" deeds, and the five that are close to these, and giving up the highest Dharma, and on and on. Every single day then deeds like these, of tremendous power, capable of leading you to the sufferings of the three lower realms and the like, will tend to increase, further and further.

The antidote for all these deeds is the nectar of the Dharma, spoken so true, and the further you turn from it then the more tightly you strangle your chances for the higher realms, and ultimate good. Death will rip away your life, and the wrong deeds you have done will drag you to the lower realms, to a fearful place of mighty and savage suffering, to the fires. And so I ask you, where could you find any thought more disastrous for you than this idea, that what is impermanent could be permanent?

28 The Benefits of Meditating on Death

ल्यान्त्रक्ष्यात्र व्यान्त्र स्वराधिक स्वराधिक

वर्षाने प्राच्या केराया स्वाप्त केराया स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स्वापत स

Here secondly is the contemplation of the benefits of meditating upon your death. Suppose on the other hand that you are able to develop a real awareness of your mortality. You would then be like a person who knew he or she were going to die within the next day or two.

If this person had even a feeble understanding of the Dharma, or of course anything more than that, then he or she would quickly realize that none of their loved ones, nor any of the things they owned or anything else, could go on the journey with them. All their attachment to these things would stop. The great majority of such people at this point would automatically start to feel some desire to get the essence out of the life they had left to them, and they would start to engage in acts such as charity and the like.

ख्याल्या ख्य

You now should be the same. Think of the gain and honor, the fame and other such things you hope for from others—all these worldly hopes and dreams. Try to see that all the efforts you put into these things are empty, meaningless, like useless shells of wheat once the grain has been taken out. Try to understand how these thoughts deceive you, how they wait to snare and trap you. Stop all your bad deeds.

Exert yourself now in the opposite—in good deeds, such as going for refuge, and observing an ethical way of life, and the like. Amass these kinds of deeds constantly, and with a sense of reverence and joy. This body and the rest may be meaningless, but you can give them the highest meaning; you can use them

to climb to the highest state there is, and then you can lead others there as well. And then I would ask you another question: Where could you find any more important deed you could do, than this?

यर्याः श्रीयाः श्रीयः यद्भरः प्रदेशः संभू रायर् । विश्वान्तः। विश्वानः। विश्वान

The Anthology too states,

Come to see that this body of yours is fragile as a piece of china,

And that all other things that exist are something similar to a mirage.

If you can, then the rain of spears thrown by the demons, the flowers,

Are stopped short, and the Lord of Death hungering for you dies himself.

र.सेचा । विद्यामित्यास्। निर्मेचे तत्रुत्यास्य त्युत्य प्राप्ति स्थान्य त्युत्य स्थान्य त्युत्य स्थान्य स्थान

It says as well that,

Those who have seen what it is to grow old,
who have seen the suffering of disease,
Those who have seen what it is to die,
who have seen the mind depart and leave,
They can give up the family life,
so much like a prison hard and fast;
Don't ever dream though that normal people
of the world could ever give up desire.

।मर्रेर.व.भ्रीश.येषु.र्र्य.पर्सेय.तषु.रेश.यु.रेल.यषु.ध्य.तप्र.ध्य.तर्.यु.रेश.

यात्रम्भारत्यात्रे मुद्र्या देश्चेत्राययाः क्रेस्याययाः क्रेस्य स्वर्म्य स्वरम्य स्वरम

To put it briefly, the time for a person to do something of value is now, and only now—now while we possess a body and life like this, so full of spiritual leisure. You and I have spent most of our time in the births of misery, and we come up now and again to the better births; but the vast majority of the time was in the realms where we had none of the necessary opportunities, and so we had no chance at all to undertake any spiritual practice.

And the fact that in this moment here, when we *have* found the kind of life where we could do some practice, we nonetheless do nothing the way it should be done, is all in the final analysis due to our belief that we will not die, just yet. We can say then that our natural bias towards thinking that we won't die is the root of every trouble we have. The antidote for this way of thinking—that is, to stay aware of our imminent death—is then the root of anything good that could ever come to us.

रितः स्वीयात्रात्यात्रात्र्याः स्वीदः वयाः यात्रकाः यञ्जीदः निर्मेश्वाः यदः स्वायाः यात्रकाः यञ्जीदः व्याः यात्रकाः यञ्जीदः वर्षे स्वायः यञ्च स्वायः यञ्च स्वायः यञ्च स्वायः यञ्च स्वायः यञ्च स्वायः यञ्च स्वयः स्वयः

This being the case, you should never let yourself think, "This is one of those practices meant for people who have nothing more profound to meditate upon." And you should never let yourself think that, "It is admittedly something we should meditate upon, but only at the beginning of our practice, and only for a bit at that; it's not something that warrants a continual effort to put into practice." Rather you should try to develop a true understanding,

from the depths of your heart, where you realize that this is a meditation which you need at the start, at the end, and all throughout the path. With this understanding established within you then, you must meditate upon your death.

29 What Death Awareness Really Is

म्।

प्राचार्यात्राच्येत्राच्येत्र्येत्र्येत्र्येत्र्येत्र्येत्र्यः विष्णान्यः विष्णान्

Here now is the third step—identifying just what kind of death awareness we seek to develop. Now there is a kind of terror that a person can feel when he or she fears that they are about to be torn away from their loved ones and such. This fear stems from a very strong attachment for those around you, and is the natural fear of a person who has never attempted any kind of practice of the path. As such, it is *not* the awareness of death that we are talking about having to develop here.

भ्रांच्याराध्येत्रभ्रम्भः व व्याप्तः प्रम्याप्तः प्रम्यः प्रम्याप्तः प्रम्यापतः प्रम्यः प्रम्यापतः प्रम्यः प्

What then is this awareness? There is not a single being who has taken on a body like ours—one created by the force of our past deeds and mental afflictions—who is exempt from the absolute certainty of death. It is true that, in the short run, trying to develop some fear about this fact might not enable you to stop it. Nonetheless you really must try to develop some fear that you might die before you have been able to achieve your goals for your future life: that you might die before you have managed to put an end to anything that might cause you to be born in one of the lower realms, or before you have achieved all those things that would lead you to the higher realms, and to ultimate good.

वहचान्ना ब्रिन्नचर्नेरम्भान्तरम्।

वहचान्ना ब्रिन्नचर्नेरम्भान्नरम्।

वहचान्ना ब्रिन्नचर्नेरम्भान्नरम्।

वहचान्ना विक्राचर्न्नस्य विक्राचर्नेरम्।

वर्नेन्नचर्नेरम्भा वर्ष्णस्य वर्षेरम्।

वर्नेन्नचर्नेरम्भान्नस्य वर्णम्।

वर्षेरम्भा वर्ष्णस्य वर्षेरम्भान्यस्य वर्षम् वर्षम्यम् वर्षम् वर्यम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम् वर्षम

If you had this kind of fear, over these kinds of things, then it would help you to do something about them, and at the moment of death itself you would have no reason to be afraid. If on the other hand you find yourself unable to achieve these goals, then when death comes you will be tormented by regret, of two different kinds. In a general sense, you will realize that you were unable to free yourself from the circle of suffering life. More specifically, you will begin to feel sheer terror over the possibility of having to drop into the realms of misery. As the *Birth Stories* say,

You concentrate your every effort,
but there's no way to stay;
What possible benefit can it be
to feel a sense of fear
And tremble over something that
you can now never repair?

You can tell yourself by looking at the nature of this world, That those who did bad deeds are at this point consumed by regret;

They realize then that they didn't at all do good the way they should, And begin to suspect that in the life beyond they will come to suffer.

The fear that you begin to feel
as you die confuses you,
Making it difficult to recall
the very deeds there were
That you did before, and that you feel
such strong regret for doing.

So make it now a habit in your life to undertake those deeds that are pure white; For where would you ever find a person who, living the Dharma, still needs fear Lord Death?

The Four Hundred too has the following verse:

Anyone who's truly sure, Who says to themselves, "I'll die," Leaves every kind of fear behind; How could they then fear Death?

Suppose then that you are able to contemplate your impermanence, and think to yourself, over and over again, "There is absolutely no doubt that I am quickly going to be ripped away from my body, and from all of my possessions." This would allow you to block the kind of desire that still entertains some hope that you will be able to avoid losing all these things.

And then you would feel none of the fear of death that comes when your mind is tormented by the thought of this loss.

30 The Meditation on Death

Next we cover the fourth step, which is how to meditate and develop this awareness of death. You should do the meditation in three stages, going through the three principles, the nine reasons, and the three resolutions. We will proceed then through the three of (a) contemplating how it is certain that we will die; (b) contemplating how there is no certainty when we will die; and (c) contemplating how, when we do die, nothing but the Dharma can be of any help to us.

31 Nothing Can Stop Death

ष्ट्रियःश्र्रा अर्थः क्ष्र्यः ग्रीटः। भ्रिं जीयः उट्टे. युं श्रीटः यह्टे. यो भ्रिं म्यं त्रायः श्रीयः युं प्रये त्रयः क्ष्र्ययः ज्या याटः त्यटः व्याः म्याः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः म्याः स्थाः स्थाः

The first of these has three parts; here is the first, which is (1) contemplating how the Lord of Death must certainly arrive and, when he does, how nothing at all can stop him.

No matter what kind of body you take on yourself, death must come to you. As the *Anthology on Impermanence* states,

If total Buddhas, and self-made Buddhas as well, And the listeners who are the followers of the Buddha, All must eventually leave their holy forms, Why should we need then speak of normal people?

We can say too that death will come to you, no matter where you go. The same text says,

It doesn't matter where you go; the place does not exist Where death would find it difficult to intrude. There is no such place in the sky, nor at the bottom Of the sea, nor deep within a mountain keep.

क्रिंग्याम्बर्ग्यीःदर्श्यापरःश्चित्राः श्चित्रः श्चित्रः विद्याः प्रस्ति । श्चित्रः विद्याः वि

So too death makes no distinction at all for the proper order of young and old when it comes to destroy its victims. On this the same work says,

Those who are now, and those who are yet to be, All must give up this body, and travel on. Realize, you wise ones, that all this dies; Live the Dharma, and do what must be done.

मुयार्स्यायानुस्रसायस्य प्रतिमात्रा द्वीयसायाः स्वीयसायसाय स्वितान्तुः स्वीतात्रः स्वीत

म् विकान म् विकासका स्थान स्यान स्थान स्यान स्थान स्य

Beyond this is the fact that no one can free themselves from the Lord of Death by outrunning him, nor turn him back with magic words or the like. As the scripture known as *Advice to the King* states,

Suppose for example that you were surrounded on all four sides by four great mountains, solid, firm, hard to the core, indestructible, unbreakable, indomitable, adamantine and massive, stretching to the highest limits of the sky. And then suppose suddenly that they caved in on you. Every trace of vegetation—from the roots, to the stalks, to the branches, to the twigs, and out to the leaves, would be crushed to powder. And every living creature there, every sentient being, every spirit too, would be smashed to dust. And as the mountains fell in it would happen in a minute, and no one would be able to outrun them, or force them back, or buy them off. Nor but with the greatest difficulty could you use any kind of magic substance, or magic words, or any sort of elixir to stop them.

र्ट र्ज्याश्चर हो दे प्रतिश्वर हो स्वाध्य स्य

Here, great King, our life is the same. When the four great terrors make their appearance, no one can outrun them, nor force them back, nor buy them off. Nor but with the greatest difficulty could you use any kind of magic substance, or magic words, or any sort of elixir to stop them.

And what are these four terrors? They are aging, and sickness, and death, and trouble. Great King, I say to you: aging is the fact that our vitality is inevitably obliterated; sickness is the fact that our health is inevitably obliterated; trouble is the fact that any good thing that ever comes to us is inevitably obliterated; and death is the fact that our very life is inevitably obliterated. All four of these come to us, and we cannot outrun them, nor force them back, nor buy them off. Nor but with the greatest difficulty could you use any kind of magic substance, or magic words, or any sort of elixir to stop them.

श्रवास्त्रीयश्चात्रीत्रात्तात् भ्रीत्यात्ते त्यात्र स्वास्त्रीयाः त्यात्त्रीयाः त्यात्त्रीयाः त्यात्त्रीयाः त्य यात्वियाः त्यां स्वास्त्राः त्रात्ते भ्रीत्यात्ते त्याः त्या

Kamawa too once said,

A person is supposed to be frightened of death now, and then unperturbed when it actually comes. You and me though act the opposite: we feel no concern for it now, and then when it actually comes we will tear at our chest in agony.

32 You Cannot Add Time to Your Life

विं त्यः र्र्भेन् यः सेन् छिट त्वीन् वीन् त्वरः सः सन् न् नुः विन्या तस्य यात्री सन् सन्यानुः

बुचा'र्यायम् न्यमुद्रम् वर्षे विष्यायम् वर्षे विष्यायम् वर्षे विष्यायम् वर्षे वर्षे विषयम् वर्षे वर्षे विषयम् वर्षे वर्षे विषयम् वर्षे व

The second reason here is (2) the contemplation of how it is impossible to add any time onto your life, and how it continually leaks away, without a pause. The scripture entitled *Entering the Womb* describes the longest you could live as follows:

Nowadays the longest you can live, supposing you are able to take care of yourself in the very best way possible, is a hundred years, or a touch more.

प्रा विश्वतात्त्र्वात्त्र्यः विश्वतात्त्रः विश्वतात्त्यः विश्वतात्त्रः विश्वतात्तः विश्वतात्त्रः विश्वतात्त्रः विश्वतात्त्रः विश्वत्तः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्ते विश्वत्तः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्यत्त्रः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्यत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्यत्यत्यत्तः विश्वत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्यत्य

Even if you could live for a hundred years, the time would pass very quickly. This is because years pass in months, and months in their turn pass in days, and days pass in daytimes and nighttimes. These too pass in the shortest periods, of mornings and evenings and the like. So a human lifespan in general is something which is very short.

देश्यत्यः श्रूरः त्राः वित्राः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः विश्वः विश्व

You and I can see for ourselves, moreover, that we've already used up a good number of these days. As for the days we have left, we know we are helpless to add a single moment to them. They leak away, twenty-four hours a day, without the slightest pause. On this the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Life* says,

Our lifetime constantly leaks away, Day and night, without a moment's pause. If your life is leaking away, and never being replenished, Then how can you imagine, that you will never die?

त्त्रम्भित्तः क्ष्याः स्त्रम्भित्तः क्ष्याः स्त्रम्भित्तः क्ष्याः स्त्रम्भित्तः स्त्रम्यः स्त

There are many examples you can use during your contemplation of these points. Think of weaving a carpet: you are building it up with rows of yarn, and each row is nothing more than a few threads of wool. But if you work steadily, it all adds up and soon you've finished an entire carpet.

Think too of a flock of sheep. When they are led to the slaughter house, they go forth with only one very short step at a time. But every single step brings them inexorably nearer to their death.

Think too of the rapids of a great river, or of a waterfall as it leaps from the top of a high cliff. The moments of your life are rushing away, just the same.

यभैरकाराजा सिंध-धु-योट-टेट-योट-प्रदेयानद्रा सिंध-ग्रीकायाध्रेट-जायधियोकाराः क्ष्य-क्ष्य-भूत्र-भूत्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्त्र-प्रस् भुष्य-प्रस्त्र-। य-प्र-टि-म्-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्ति-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्ति-प्रस्ति-प्रस्त्र-प्रस्ति-प्

भ्रीता विश्वाचिर्यात्तं स्था । त्रियं विश्वाचिर्यात् विश्वाचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचचिर्यात् । त्रियं विश्वचचयं विश्वचचयं । त्रियं विश्वचयं विश्वचयं विश्वचयं विश्वचयं विश्वचयं । त्रियं विश्वचयं विश्वचयं

A cowherd takes a club up in his hand and drives the cattle, totally helpless, to their destination. Just so do sickness and the natural aging of our bodies drive us, totally helpless, into the presence of the Lord of Death. You must use a whole variety of such examples in your meditation upon death; as the *Anthology* again says,

When for example you start to weave a carpet, You build it up, a string of wool at a time— Eventually then you weave it to the end. Human lives are just the same.

Those condemned to death are another example, Passing along with a single step at a time, Drawing ever closer to the slaughter. Human lives are just the same.

The rapids of a mighty river Rush unstoppable to their end; The passing of a human life Is just as irreversible.

Our lives are simple hardship, short, And something full of suffering; In simple speed we are all destroyed, Letters written with a stick on water.

A cowherd for example grasps a staff, Then drives the cattle to their destination. Just so sickness and the ravages of age Transport us to the presence of Lord Death.

त्य्। विश्वरित्रं अव्यक्ष्मं वश्वर्याश्वर्या । विश्वरित्रं स्वा विश्वर्यं स्व विश्वरं स्व विश्वर

They say as well that the great Lord Atisha would go to the edge of a stream and meditate there on the death; he would comment that "Sitting here and watching a trickle of water pass by is a wonderful way to meditate on life's impermanence." The *Sutra* of the Cosmic Play uses a lot of similes as well:

The three realms are impermanent,
like a cloud in the autumn sky;
Watching as people are born and die
is the same as theater.
The passing of a person's life
is a single flash of lightning;
We rush on our way to the end with speed,
like a waterfall off a cliff.

स्।

त्राचित्राच्यात्रच्यात्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात्रच्यात

It has been said that, "For a person who has the least bit of ability to reflect and draw some inferences on the inside, there is nothing outside of them that doesn't speak of impermanence." As such, you should try to find in your life a whole variety of examples for the fact of impermanence. Use these examples for your contemplation—and when you have contemplated thus on a regular basis, you will gain a true recognition of your impermanence. Just thinking these things over once or twice is not enough to reach this recognition. As Kamawa once said,

Here's a question for all you people who say you tried to do this contemplation but didn't get any result from it. Just *when* was it that you were contemplating? All day long you were distracted by other things. At night all you did was sleep. Perhaps you should stop lying to yourself.

At the end of our life, the Lord of Death comes and destroys us, and we travel on to our next life. But there is something else too that happens all during the interim, during every hour of our life here. There is not a single moment at all when our lifetime is not slipping away, when it is not getting shorter and shorter, even as we go somewhere, or stay somewhere, waking or sleeping. So in a sense we are always on our way to our next life, we are travelling there now, and we have been on the move every second from the day we first entered our mother's womb.

Therefore even in these days, while we still live, we are living only to die: those emissaries of death, the ones called Sickness and Aging, are dragging us

towards him. Don't take any comfort then in the fact that you haven't died yet, don't get the idea that you are staying anywhere, and that you haven't yet started off on your journey to the next life. You are like a man who just fell off the edge of a great rock crag; you would be foolish to take some comfort from the fact that you are still in mid-air, and haven't hit ground yet.

भेत्र-तिवित्त । वर्षेश्वास्त्र-वर्ष्याः स्वाप्तः वर्षः व स्वाप्तः वर्षः वर्षे । वर्षे वर्षः वर्षे वर्षः वर्षे वर्षः वर्षः

The following lines too are quoted in the commentary on *The Four Hundred*:

This warrior amongst men, from the very first night, From the moment of entering the womb in this world Walks with each passing day, with ne'er a delay, Into the presence of the Lord of Death.

यशिरश्राश्च । र्राट्यायीश्चर्यायाश्चर्यायाश्चर्यायाश्चर्यायाश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायायश्चर्यायाः विषयाय्यायाः विषयाय्यायाः विषयाः विषयः व

The Words on Stopping the Four Misconceptions also speak to this point:

Suppose you had fallen from the peak
of some high mountain top,
And were just about to die—would you then
in the free-fall feel content?
From the moment of their birth they race
to one goal only, death;
How before they reach there then
could any living being relax?

All of the above is meant to show how it is certain that we will die quickly.

33 You Have No Time Even While You're Alive

यद्र-ह्री विश्वास्तरः।

वद्र-ह्री विश्वास्तरः।

व्रित्तव्रे व्रित्तव्रे व्रित्तव्रे व्रित्तव्रे व्रित्वव्रे व्रिव्यः व्रित्तव्रे व्रिव्यः व्रित्तव्रे व्रिव्यः व्रिव्यः व्रिव्यः व्रित्तव्रे व्रिव्यः व्यव्यः व्रिव्यः व्यव्यः व्यवः व्यव्यः व्यवः व

Next is contemplating (3) how certain it is that you will die without having had any time to practice the Dharma, even while you were alive. Suppose you were able to live to the end of one of those longest lives that we described above. Even so it would be wrong to think that you would have any free time all that time. So far in your life you have squandered a great deal of time meaninglessly; as for what remains, you will pass half of it in sleeping.

The other half you will also spend meaninglessly, your mind filled with a great many other distractions. You will while away you days of good health and then arrive at old age, you body and mind worn out, and lacking any energy to do any Dharma, even if you wanted to. The point is that the window of opportunity during which we can undertake our spiritual practice is nothing more than a very brief period. As *Entering the Womb* relates,

You spend half of it wrapped in sleep. Ten years is wasted by childhood, and another twenty in old age. From what's left you

have to subtract the time you spend in grief, and the time you spend crying in anguish, and the time you spend in physical pain, and the time you spend in deep unhappiness, and the time you spend in strife. Subtract too the time that you spend going through all those thousands of different diseases which the body is subject to.

The Words on Stopping the Four Misconceptions concur:

Suppose you live to a human's longest life;
it can never be more than a hundred years.

Of these you spend the beginning, your youth,
and the end, old age, in a meaningless way.

In the days that are left, all your hopes and plans
are smashed by sleep, and disease, and the rest;

Tell me then how much time is left over, for those
who live as humans, to feel any kind of contentment?

Chekawa too has said,

I have been alive for sixty years; and if you take away the time that I spent feeding myself, and sleeping, and being sick, there were not even five years left that I had for spiritual practice.

स्रमा । बिस्तार् ताःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः । स्याःस्मार्याः स्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःस्मार्याः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याःसाः स्याः स्याःसाः स्याः स्याः स्याः स्याः स्याःसाः स्याः स्य

And so all the good things of this life are like the happiness within one night's dream: you wake, and then it's nothing more than a memory. The time comes to die, and everything good you ever had lives only in a dim remembrance.

This great enemy, death, will surely come; nothing can stop him. You should contemplate this fact—try to wonder, "Why do I take such pleasure in the lie of this life?" Make up your mind that you absolutely must now practice some Dharma; swear it to yourself, continually. Remember the *Birth Stories*, where it says:

Alas, you worldly ones so full of affliction of the mind; Why do you take such pleasure in a land of shifting sands? The shining glory of the kumuda bloom, opening to the moon, Soon enough turns nothing more than a simple memory.

It's something of a pure amazement too that all of us Thrust into a life like this are not consumed by total fear; Damn the Lord of Death, who stands and blocks all pathways out, While we oblivious feel content, and have an enjoyable day.

We all share enemies, dreadfully powerful, ones we cannot stop: Their names are sickness, age, and death; they attack us even now. If it's certain that we are headed for agony in the world beyond, How could anyone with a mind be content in the one here now? यश्राश्ची

यश्चार्यः श्चीरश्चार्यं विश्वार्यं विश्वर्यं विश्वयं विश्वर्यं विश्वर्यं विश्वयं विश्वर्यं विश्वयं विश्वयं

Go now and contemplate these lines, from the Epistle of Kanika:

The Lord of Death, the heartless one, Lays waste to the efforts of a lifetime; With such a death on its way to him, What man of wisdom would sit and wait?

This merciless warrior stands and aims His detestable merciless arrow at you; In the time before he lets it fly then Try to make something of your life.

34 There is No Certainty when You will Die

वश्रास्त्रात्त्रभः विद्यात्रभः विद्यात्रभः विद्यात्रभः विद्याः विद्यः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः

Here next is the second of the three principles: contemplating how there is no certainty when we will die. It is an absolute certainty that death will come to us at some point between today and a hundred years from now. It is not certain though which day between these two he will choose. As such, we would have to admit that it's impossible to come to a definite conclusion whether or not we will die, for example, today itself.

Nonetheless, if you are going to try to think more on the mortal side, then you will have to develop the attitude that you will die today. If you tend to think more on the side that denies your mortality—that is, if you tend to think that you won't die today, or that you probably won't die today—then you will constantly be acting on the assumption that you will continue to be here, rather than doing something to help your future life. Right in the middle of everything then the Lord of Death will come to take you, and you will have to die in anguish.

च्यान्य स्थान्य स्थान

If you spend every day getting ready to die, you will find yourself able to achieve many goals that relate to your future lives. This is an excellent thing to do regardless of whether you actually die that day or not. And it is an absolute necessity if you *do* happen to die that very day.

This truth can be illustrated with the following example. Suppose you have a sworn enemy, a very powerful one, and that he is planning to make some vicious attack on you. Suppose too that the general timeframe for this attack has been decided: you know that he is going to come for you sometime between this date and that date. You're not sure exactly which day he's going to appear, but you would certainly have to be on your guard every single day. The case with our death is exactly the same.

या वस्रम्यन्ति स्त्रीत्त्र विद्यानित्ते विद्यानितित्ति विद्यानितित्ति विद्यानितित्ति विद्यानितिति विद्यानिति

Suppose you are able to develop this attitude where you believe that you are going to die today, or at least that it is very likely that you will die today. The result is that you will start getting things ready for what is surely going to come—that is, for your next life—and you will stop concentrating on arranging things in your current life.

If you are unable to develop this attitude, then you will continue to believe somehow that you are going to be staying here in the present life, and you will continue to concentrate on organizing things for this life. You will continue too to ignore what's needed for your future life.

If for example you believe that you are going to be living in a certain house for a long time to come, you concentrate your time on making the house a nice place to live. If one the other hand you believe that you are moving to another house, if you believe that you will not be staying in the house where you are, then you naturally begin to concentrate on getting everything ready for the place you're going to go. Again, our case is just the same.

This proves that you must develop the attitude that you are going to die today, every day.

35 There is No Such Thing as an "Average" Lifespan

वदर्ययाक्षेत्रायम्। वह्त्रानुःश्चेरःयवेःक्षेःयाद्यःक्षेःवेदःविदःहुःस्यःयःभेदःश्चेतःयवेःक्षेत्रःयःभेदःश्चेतःयवे भेःश्चेदःयवेःक्षेःदेशःदेशःयाः। वह्त्रानुःश्चेरःयवेःक्षेःयःयवेःक्षेःवेदःहुःस्यःयःभेदः विदरःययःक्षेत्रःयम्। वह्त्रानुःश्चेरःयवेःक्षेःयःयवेःक्षेःवेदःहुःस्यःयःभेदःश्चे द्रा होत् स्त्री के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त स्वाप्

There are three reasons to prove this second principle, that there is absolutely no certainty when you are going to die. The first is the contemplation that (4) here on the continent of Dzambu, lifetimes are anything but fixed. Looking at things in a broad way, we can say that the length of a life on the continent of Unpleasant Sound is something which is fixed. And although on the other continents the span of life is not fixed, there are many cases where a certain length of life is normally the case.

Here on the continent of Dzambu though a person's life is anything but fixed. There are times at the beginning of the world when people can live up to an "inestimable" number of years. Eventually though there comes a time when the longest life we can point to is only ten years. Even nowadays we can see with our own eyes how indefinite lifetimes can be, as death comes for the old, and the young, and those inbetween, at random.

यशिरमान्नी श्रीसार्थ्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राक्ष्यामान्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राच्यामान्यास्त्राच्यास्त्राच्यास्त्राच्यास्त्राच्याः विष्यास्याः स्वतः स्वतः

વશ્ચશ્ચાતા વશ્ચામાં માર્ક સ્ત્રાપ્ત માર્ક ત્રાહ્યાં સ્ત્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્

As the *Treasure House* says,

Here indefinite: at the very end, Ten years; at the beginning "inestimable."

The Anthology too states,

In the morning a lot of people were standing here; By evening some of them were missing. In the evening a lot of people were standing here; By morning some of them were missing.

So too it says,

We see men die, we see women die, We see those in the bloom of health die; So how on earth could you point to someone And say, "He's young, he'll certainly live."

Some people die still in the womb, Some people die in the moment of birth, Some people die standing still, Some people die on the run.

Some are old, some are young, Some are strong ones in between, They walk and then drop, in a steady stream, Like ripe fruit falling from a tree.

Think of great lamas you've known, or friends, or anyone—the people that you've seen yourself, or heard about from others—who died before their time. Something on the outside, or something on the inside of them, came and killed them suddenly, before they were able to do all the things they were hoping to do.

You must think to yourself, "I'm in exactly the same situation now that they were in when they died..." Try to think this truth over again and again; try your best to reach this realization of your death.

36 The Things than Can Kill You are Infinite

ययय. तयु. क्ष्य. में भारा क्षेत्र. कष्टे क्षेत्र. कष्षेत्र. कष्य क्षेत्र. क्षेत्र. क्षेत्र. क्षेत्र. कष्षेत्र. कष्षेत्र. कष्षेत्

Next is the contemplation that (5) the things that can kill you are very, very many; whereas the things that can keep you alive are very few. There are many things that threaten the kind of life we live: threats that are living beings, and threats that are inanimate objects. Humans and inhumans, beings of the spirit realm, do harm to us in many different ways. Beings of the animal realm threaten our body and life in a variety of ways as well.

You have to try to contemplate thoroughly all the ways in which these living things can hurt you; and how too that inner things like sickness, and outer things made of the various physical elements, attack you constantly.

भ्रीश्रश्रात्त्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्त्रं त्रात्रं त्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रत्रं त्रत्रत्रत्रत्रत्रत्रत्र

Moreover, your body consists by necessity of the four elements. Their nature is to be in conflict with each other, which causes the energies of the four to fall out of balance, some asserting themselves too strongly, and some becoming too weak. This situation triggers then illness within the body, and this eventually rips out your life. And so in a way you are under attack by the components of your own body. Since these elements are a very part of you, life is by nature a very fragile thing.

The Sutra of the Great Nirvana says as well,

And then there is the conception of death: see your life as standing there, surrounded all the time by a mass of hate-filled enemies, life leaking away with every moment, and no hope at all of ever filling back what was lost.

दविर्याक्षेत्रं ग्रीकाल्या यात्रका । विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः वि

The String of Jewels also states,

The tools of Lord Death are the very world around us; Our lives are candles standing in a tempest.

The Letter to a Friend mentions,

Our lives are filled with danger, and we are more fragile Than a bubble of water swept along in the wind. The fact that we live long enough to exhale after inhaling, Or wake again from a night of sleep, is truly a miracle.

बिश्वाम्बर्धाः । विद्यायाः मह्मार्थाः विद्यायाः विद्यायायाः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायः

The Four Hundred again says,

Alone they have no power to give us birth; Only as a group can the elements in us work. It would be totally wrong for a person to say That this inner war could ever feel good.

क्रूट्-बेशक्र्-चेश्र-क्र्यांश्यंश्यंश्यंश्यंश्यंश्यं। क्रूट्-बेशक्र-वेशक्र्यं क्रुं-वेशक्र-क्रि-विश्वः क्रि-विश्वः क्र्यं क्रि-विश्वः क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्र्यं क्रयं क्र्यं क्रयं क्रयं

These are the days when the five degenerations have spread to a very great extent, when it is infinitely difficult to find anyone who is capable of amassing the powerful good karma necessary for producing any very long lifetime. Food and other kinds of medicinal substances have little potency, and lack any great power to stop diseases.

The general ability of the body to break down easily the things we eat and drink, so that the great elements within the body can be properly nourished, is declining. We find it difficult to digest these things, and even after they are digested they have little beneficial effect on our bodies.

There is an additional problem caused by the fact that we are able to collect only small quantities of good karmic energy, whereas we commit massive amounts of bad deeds. These diminish greatly the power of practices such as repeating a number of mantras, and so it is extremely difficult to use these methods to lengthen our lifespan, and such.

यर्थर.येर.योथन्नः विट्टार्स्ययोनः त्यः भूयोन्नः तः स्थानः कूतः त्याः विट्टार्योग्यानः त्याः विट्टार्यायोनः त्या

Beyond all this is the fact that there is nothing at all that we use to keep ourselves alive that cannot also turn into something that kills us. We spend our lives searching for food and drink, or a place to stay, or friends or the like, with the intent that they help keep us from dying.

But they can all turn into something that kills us instead. If we eat or drink too much, or too little, or ingest something which is not clean or the like, it can kill us. Our house can collapse on us, and our friends can cheat us, and they can all in the end lead us to our deaths. You literally cannot find anything that is supposed to keep you alive that cannot kill you as well.

नित्यस्याम् क्रिंत्रस्य हिराज्ये । विश्वाम्यस्य विश्वास्य प्रमान्त्रस्य विश्वास्य प्रमान्त्रस्य विश्वास्य प्रमान्त्रस्य विश्वास्य विश्वस्य विश्वस्य

Moreover, life itself is directed at dying; even if there were more objects that were supposed to function to keep us alive, we could hardly put any faith in them. As the *String of Jewels* says,

The things that can kill us are many; Those that keep us alive are precious few, And act as well to kill us. We must as such do all the Dharma we can.

37 Our Bodies are So Fragile

त्रमःविदः तृष्ण्यः स्ट्रान्यम् द्यायके द्यायके । व्यायके । व्यायक

Next is the contemplation that there is no certainty when we will die, for the reason that (6) our bodies are extremely fragile. Our bodies really are very fragile, very much like a bubble, and it requires no great injury to destroy our life-force: even something like the prick of a thorn, if we disregard it, can kill us. The point is that none of the things that can kill us has to try very hard to kill us. The *Letter to a Friend* says,

Great edifices like the earth itself, and the mountain At the center of the world, and the seas, all burn When the seven suns rise, and not even dust remains. Who needs to mention then that fragile thing called man?

द्रे.श्रेर.वश्चीर.चत्री । श्रर.ट्रे.योर्ट्य.श्च.च.य.ख्ट्री । विश्व.ट्रा विश्व

Once you have taken this contemplation to its end, it will occur to you clearly that there is no certainty at all when the Lord of Death will decide to come and destroy your body and life. You will realize that you have no time left; and then you must make many solemn vows to yourself, you must resolve to practice the Dharma here and now. As the *Epistle of Kanika* states,

The Lord of Death is partial to no one; When he strikes, he does so suddenly.

Don't ever say then you'll "Do it tomorrow"; Practice the Dharma instead with speed.

It's no good thing for a human being Ever to say, "I'll do it tomorrow"; The tomorrow when you are no longer here Is a day that beyond any doubt will come.

च्यां च्यां व्यां त्रिंत्र क्षे व्यां क्षेत्र व्याः क्षेत्र क

That lord of accomplished practitioners, Shri Jagata Mitra Ananda, has also spoken:

The spirit lord will take this form you rent, In health, in its prime, in an hour of contentment, And rip away in this very moment its heart.

You sit there now unconcerned by disease or death, By decline and the like, but when the day arrives To meet them face to face you'll know nothing to do.

Of all the three principles, this one, the contemplation that it is totally uncertain when you will die, is the most important. Since this attitude is the critical one, you must do your best to grow it within you.

38
When You Die, Nothing but the Dharma Can Help You
|गुरुअ: पः पक्के: प्रते: केंश्रं अ: या किंग्रं अ: पः प्राव्य विकः प्राप्त विकः ग्राप्त अंश्रं प्राप्त विकः प्राप्त विकः

विष्ठ-र्ने, श्रेन्त्र विष्ठ व

Here finally are the three reasons behind the third principle, which is that—when you do die—nothing but the Dharma can be of the least help to you.

So we have seen that we will be forced to pass on to a future life. When the day comes, you can be surrounded by any number of friends and relatives, by people who love you and whose hearts are torn, but (7) there is not a single one of them that you can take along with you. You can be the owner of a great heap of lovely riches, any amount of them at all, but (8) you cannot carry along with you a single molecule. When you die (9) you must give up even the flesh and bone that are part of your very being; it's ridiculous to think then that you could keep anything else.

च्चिर्द्धश्चाः त्रच्चित्रः स्वाः विक्षेत्रः स्वाः स्व

We can say then that each and every good thing of this life will send us away, and we too will send them away, and pass on to our next life: this is, simply, quite certain to happen. You must contemplate how this is coming to you today, and you must contemplate how, when the moment comes, it is only the Dharma which will be your refuge, and your protector, and your one true friend. As the *Epistle of Kanika* says,

The karma ripens, and all your deeds From before abandon and leave you alone. Driven by all the new karma now, You're forced ahead by the Lord of Death.

Everyone you've ever known
Is left behind, and only the good
Or bad you've done comes with you.
Please understand, and do only things that are right.

यशिरकाताक्षरात्ती विकास्त्र स्था स्था विकास्त्र स्

It's just as Shri Jagata Mitra describes it:

Now matter how wealthy you are, Your Highness, Once you die and slip to the world beyond, It's like standing defeated in an empty desert—

Alone, without the Prince, without the Queen, Without a stitch of clothing, without a friend, Without a kingdom, without a country at all; Solitary, single, not a trusted servant in sight.

To put it simply, how could you hope for more In a land where you no longer own your own name?

 यक्षा विश्वानिश्चरमानद्वः द्वीरः र्वा विश्वानिश्चरमानद्वः द्वीरः र्वा विश्वानिश्चरमानद्वः द्वीरः विश्वानिश्चरमानद्वः द्वीरः विश्वानिश्चरमानद्वः द्वीरः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्त

Thus it is then that you must contemplate upon the awareness of your death: the spiritual leisure you now possess is extremely valuable; it is extremely difficult to find; and beyond its being so hard to find it is also extremely easy to lose.

Suppose we fail even to attempt reaching something of ultimate benefit, for our next life and beyond; suppose instead we spend all the time from now up to the moment of our death in the pursuit of the things that make us feel good, and in avoiding the things that cause us pain.

Common animals are more skilled at this endeavor than we could ever be; we need to engage in some kind of activity that distinguishes us from beasts. Otherwise achieving the kind of life in a higher birth that we enjoy now is essentially the same as never having found it at all. As the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Life* puts it,

There are certain insignificant gains That are not a difficult thing to attain Even for a cow if he tries;

Yet there are those who suffer from karma And waste this perfect leisure and fortune, Achieved with such effort, on nothing more.

And so even though the awareness of your death may sometimes seem a difficult thing to attain, you must still make great efforts to do so, for it is the very foundation of the path. Potowa too has said,

My guiding lamp is nothing but this meditation on my own impermanence. It helps me to clear away all my concern about the things of this life—my friends and possessions and so on—and realize that I will be flying away to my next life, alone, with no one to come along with me. Then I am truly able to stop my attachment to my current life, and maintain an intention never to do anything which is against the Dharma. As long as you find yourself unable to reach this state of mind, you will find too that the road to each and every part of the teaching is shut off to you.

त्रियम्बर्धिकात्रम् । बर्धिकात्रम् विवाशाद्यात्रम् विवाशाद्यात्यम् विवाशाद्यात्रम् विवाशाद्यात्यम् विवाशाद्यात्यम् विवाशाद्यात्यम् विवाशाद्यात्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यस्यम्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस्यस

Dolpa once stated,

You must along the way undertake practices to amass the energy of good deeds, and to purify yourself of spiritual obstacles. So too you must make supplication to the angels, and to your Lama. If then you put all your heart into contemplating this attitude, if you focus on it, you will be able to attain it. Things produced by causes have a basic nature that they can never just stay the same, and you will find that you can arrive at certain kinds of attitudes that you thought you could never develop in a thousand years of trying.

।गाःभायायाप्रभेषाभायाञ्चायमः लुषार्यः स्थान् । वर्षे स्थालुषार्यः स्या

त्र-विद्।

त्र-विद।

त्

They say too that when someone would ask Kamawa if they could move on to a new spiritual topic he would say, "Work again on the old one." When they asked if he could finish up the old one, he would say, "There is no finish to the old one." So if your mind can handle it, do the meditation as I have described it above. If your mind cannot handle it, then try to absorb as many of the nine reasons for the three principles as fits your capacity.

Meditate over and over on your death until you gain a complete disgust for the activities of this life; until you can think of them like a man on his way to the site of his execution, stopping to put on some fine jewelry.

The subjects of how to serve a spiritual guide, of the spiritual fortune and leisure of this life, and of our impermanence are found throughout the supreme form of speech, the word of the Buddha, and the commentaries upon it. You must come to realize that these are instructions to be put into practice at each point where they occur, and so you should actually undertake them at each step.

If you do so, then you will be able to grasp the true intent of the victorious Buddhas quite easily. You should apply this advice to each of the other sections here as well.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Seven: The Ethical Life, Part One

The Ethical Life Empowers You for Meditation and Wisdom

The first reading for this class comes from Je Tsongkapa's *Epistle to Ngawang Drakpa on the Occasion of the Ordination of the First Monks of Gyalrong*. Master Ngawang Drakpa, also known as Tsako Wonpo ("the friar of the lineage of the Kings of Tsako"), was one of Je Tsongkapa's closest disciples. After he had trained him in the Dharma, Je Tsongkapa sent Ngawang Drakpa to a distant region in east Tibet, entrusted with the mission of establishing a number of monasteries and training Buddhist monks.

The ensuing correspondence between the teacher and his faraway disciple has provided us with several true classics of Buddhist thought, including the following demonstration of the role of an ethical life in developing one's ability to meditate and perceive emptiness. Another letter from Je Tsongkapa to Ngawang Drakpa during this period contains the famous *Three Principal Paths*, which along with the commentary of Pabongka Rinpoche has been translated in the book *The Principal Teachings of Buddhism*. The introduction to this book also contains more detail on Master Ngawang Drakpa's life, and his close relationship to Je Tsongkapa.

Please note that the version of the letter available for translation contained a number of printing errors that have been corrected to the best of our ability; we hope to obtain another edition later for comparison.

।ক্সিএ'ব'রমম'শ্রী'বর'ববীর'বাদিশ। ।ক্সি'বন্য'রমম'শ্রী'বর'ববীর'কম।

चि:ब्रिंट्सर्युःवहेंब्रःवास्तुरुःरेवा वि:ब्रिंट्सर्युःवहेंब्रःवास्तुरुःरेवा

The high Dharma of the Victorious Ones Is a goldmine of happiness for all beings; And you, my son, are its fearless keeper— I pray you may reign for a thousand years.

विक्रीतुःस्राम्योक्षान्याम्य । विक्रीतुःस्राम्य । विक्रीतुःस्राम्य । विक्रीतुःस्राम्य । विक्रान्य । विक्राय । विक्रान्य । विक्रान्य । विक्रान्य । विक्रान्य । विक्रान्य । विक्राय । विक्रान्य । विक्रान्य । विक्राय । व

Wise one the news is that you have brought The sunlight of the Able One's word To that dark far land, and filled it with princes Of Buddha kings practicing hard and pure.

A letter informing me of these tidings, Lovely thoughts in lovely stars of words, Has due to your kindness reached me here, Borne by several freed from the family life.

१२.क्र.चन्याः धरः विदः चवः दे। १९८७ मुनः क्रेंतः क्रेंदः यदः

म्बियात्रानुरःगीयःमःश्रूरःचरःग्रीर। मिर्नेयात्रानुरःगीयःमेर्यरःग्रीरा

When the note touched my hand The wind of your immaculate deeds Swept up the cotton wisp of my mind And carried my thoughts to you there.

वियासर्वेद्यत्वेषाय्यत्वेष्ययः स्त्रीत्यायः वियान्यत्रः केट्यत्वेष्यः प्रतेष्यः प्रतेष्यः स्त्रेष्यः स्त्रेष्

The training on perfect concentration,
quietude, must come
Before one can ever the develop the one
on wisdom, the ultimate vision.
Only a trace of this truth can be heard
anymore, and not a peep
On the fact that good concentration can't come
without first training in ethics.

विष्याविष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः व

Some people find only the courage to pledge themselves in word to this training,
Then later discard their commitments like trash; they are lowest in a world of low.

The way of the holy is different; they make every conceivable effort
In keeping whatever ethical rules they may have committed to.

निःस्रम्म्यार्थेद्द्रस्य स्थान्त्रेश्चायत्यः श्चीत्रायत्यः स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य नित्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्य

वित्तत्रः स्थायत् व्यायात्रः स्त्रीत् स्यात्रे स्थाः स्थाः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्यात् । ते स्थात्रे स्थायात्रः स्यात् स्यात्रः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्थाः स्यात्रः स्थाः स्थाः

Once you have realized this fact
you must rely on watchfulness
And awareness; constantly checking all three
of the gateways for any wrong deeds,
Depending as well on a sense of care
and propriety to control
With all your strength the wild horse
of the senses, seeking to keep

This steed from taking you to a path that leads you all astray.

With this state of mind you'll be able to hold your concentration perfectly

Fixed on any virtuous object at your heart's content.

Thus is the ethical life commended for perfect concentration.

|तकवा|ब्रिम्नार्डामवे:क्र्यामान्दावाक्टा|

| द्वाःचदःद्रभगश्यः स्स्रश्यः स्थाः व्यास्य वित्राः | देः यः चद्वाः सेदःदेः क्षेदः स्वः मृः वास्य वा | द्वाः यद्वाः सेदः देः क्षेदः स्वः मृः वास्य वा

This state of mind is totally free
of the dirt of broken morality,
And is never disturbed or distracted from
the object of goodness you choose;
Therefore suchness, the lack of a self,
is perfectly clear to it,
Just like the moon's reflection on water
undisturbed and crystal clear.

2 The Vows of Individual Freedom

The next selection is taken from the first part of *Daymaker* (*Nyin-byed*), composed by Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) as a commentary to the *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline* ('*Dul-ba rgya-mtso'i snying-po*), a summary of the *vinaya* teachings by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

|श्रास्त्रः व्यक्षः विष्यः व्यक्षः विष्यः विषयः विषय

There is something which, if you rely on it, Is the way to travel with ease to the city of freedom; The supreme essence of the teachings of those Gone to Bliss: It is that which is called "individual freedom."

तयुःवर्वतायायोदःवायम्बर्धतः वर्षत्रमः योः श्रृंश्वायः स्वरः याः स्वरः याः स्वरः याः स्वरः याः स्वरः याः स्वरः य विश्वायश्चार्ष्वतः वा द्वारेषः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः याः स्वरः याः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः

ख्राल्या क्षात्रा क्षात्रा क्षात्रा क्षात्रा क्षात्र क्षात्र

The "something" in the root text refers to the very root of the Buddha's teachings; that is, to the vows of individual freedom and the books on the code of discipline which take these vows as their subject matter. Suppose you rely on this: you take these vows of individual freedom, and you keep them well. This then is the way, the staircase, for traveling with ease (without any great difficulty) up to the city of the higher realms, freedom, and omniscience.

This "something" is also the *supreme essence* (*snying-po*) of the teachings of the Buddhas (*those* who have "Gone to Bliss"), the very lifeblood (*snying*) that allows these teachings to survive in our world.

This "something," *that which* we *call* the "vows of *individual freedom,"* is so named because those individuals who take and then keep them properly will escape the cycle of suffering, whereas those who don't, will not.

The Principal Points in the Teaching on the Vows of Individual Freedom

विर्मित्रम्बित्स्य प्रमानित्सः । विर्मेश्वित्स्य प्रमानित्स्य । विर्मेश्वित्स्य प्रमानित्स्य । विर्मेश्वित्स्य विष्णेष्ठः । विरम्भवित्स्य विष्णेष्ठः । विरम्भवित्स्य विष्णेष्ठः ।

In keeping, I shall explain them in six categories: Their basic nature, the way they are divided, Their individual descriptions, who can take them, How they are lost, and the benefits they give.

द्या वर्षे वर् वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर

Je Tsongkapa is saying that he is *going to explain* the vows of individual freedom, which he only touched upon above, *in keeping* with the true intent of the victorious Buddhas. He is going to do so *in six categories: their basic nature, the way they are divided* into eight types, *their individual descriptions, who can take them, how they are lost, and the benefits they give* when you keep them properly.

The Essence of the Vows of Individual Freedom

|इंया.त... |यावय.यार्च्र.यावु.रट.यश्य.त.जश| |इंया.त्युट.यावु.रट.यश्य.त.जश|

It is a turning away from harming others, And its basis, caused by an attitude Of renunciation...

बिर्याययार्स्ट्रेवाया र्वेवाची मालवामीयारार्स्यान्यायास्त्रम्यार्थवास्यायास्त्रम्या

र्श्यायान्ने स्वास्त्र स्

Here Je Tsongkapa is saying that one's commitment to these vows should be *caused by*—that is, motivated by—*an attitude* where one feels a deep disgust for every single inch of the cycle of suffering life, and has thus decided to *renounce* it. You should not take the vows simply because you are imitating someone else, or just following the crowd.

The basic nature of the vows then is as follows. In the presence of your Lama, you agree and pledge yourself to *turn away from harming others;* you agree to refrain from the seven physical and verbal deeds which are wrong by nature, *and* to avoid their *basis* as well. Here the word "basis" refers either to the three mental bad deeds that act as a foundation for the seven, or else to those bad deeds which were prohibited by Lord Buddha.

5 The Different Types of Vows

|यक्केत्रःयात्रश्चः दयोः यक्केतः सः शः द्राः |दयोः र्क्षुतः सः शः द्रयोः क्केतः सः शः |दयोः क्केतः सः शः द्रदः द्रयोः क्केतः स्वे। |क्षाः क्षेत्रः स्वरः सः रेशः यक्कुदः दें।

Staying close, close to virtue. Way to virtue, versed in virtue, And begging for virtue. These are The eight kinds of individual freedom. पदुः र्कूश्रायाता देवी: बर्ड शावचिराल् दे हिशाय हो।

पदुः र्कूश्रायाता देवी: बर्ड शावचिराल् दे हिशाय हो।

स्वायात्र स्वायात्र स्वाया हेर्य स्वाया हेर्या स्वाया हो स्वया हो स्वाया हो स्वाय हो स्वाया हो स्वाया हो स्वाया हो स्वाया हो स्वया हो स्वाया हो स्वया हो स्

The one-day vows are called "staying close" because they help you stay close to nirvana in the sense of taking you there. The lifetime vows for laymen and laywomen are called "close to virtue" because they help you be close to virtue, which here refers to nirvana. The vows of male novices and female novices are called "way to virtue" because those who possess these vows have entered the way, that is the path, which leads to virtue, again referring to nirvana. The vows of an intermediate nun are called "versed in virtue" because these women are versing themselves in the twelve rules, in order to be able to keep the vows of a fully ordained nun. Fully ordained monks and fully ordained nuns are called "begging for virtue" because they are begging, that is seeking, that state of virtue: nirvana. In this verse Je Tsongkapa is thus listing the eight kinds of individual freedom vows.

6
The Root Four One-Day Vows

|क्रे.क्रट्यःक्केंट्र.ट्रट्यः स्थितः योव। |श्र्र्याः यार्केट्रः यद्द्वरः दुःश्चः यः इससा |सः यः यत्वेः ध्येवः सत्यः क्रें सर्वेष |क्रटः वश्चटः यारः श्र्यासः वश्चेटः श्र्यासः दृटः ।

|र्यु:र्देवे:|य:बर्ष:धरःयम्।यहे।

The root four are sexual activity, Stealing, killing, and speaking lies. The secondary four are high valuable seats, Drinking alcohol, dancing and so on, Ornamentation and such, and food after noon.

The root four are sexual activity, stealing something of value, killing a human or a human fetus, and speaking lies about your spiritual realizations. The secondary four are (1) making use of a seat or bed which is valuable in that it incorporates jewels or some other precious substance, or else which is higher than a cubit; (2) drinking alcohol or any brewed or concocted substance which causes an intoxicated state; (3) dancing and "so on," which refers to singing and playing music, or else ornamenting yourself and "such"—that is, wearing jewelry or makeup; and finally (4) eating food after noon.

7 The Lifetime Vows for a Layperson

।য়ূঌ৻৻ঽয়ৢৼ৻ঽয়ৢৼ৻য়৽ৄৼ৻য়। ঀয়ৢঌ৻ঽয়ৢৼৢৼৼ৻য়য়৻য়ৼ৻য়৻য়য়

। द्यो प्रश्लेष श्री है से सार्थे।

The lifetime layperson's vow is to give up The five of killing, stealing, and lying, Adultery, and drinking intoxicants.

हि. श्री ८. १० कुटु. तय र विश्व विश्व स्थाय स्य

The procedure for taking the lifetime vows of a layperson is as follows. In the presence of a preceptor who holds at least these same vows, you begin with formally taking refuge. You next pledge that, for the length of your entire life, you will give up breaking the five basic rules, and avoid as well those actions which are inconsistent with the advices on going for refuge. The five rules here are to give up killing a human or human fetus; stealing anything of significant value (that is, anything worth more than a quarter of a karshapana [somewhere between an American quarter and a dollar]); lying about your spiritual attainments; committing adultery by having sexual relations with someone else's spouse; and drinking alcohol, or any substance which makes you intoxicated.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Eight: The Ethical Life, Part Two

The first selections for this reading are taken from *Daymaker* (*Nyin-byed*), composed by Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) as a commentary to the *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline* ('*Dul-ba rgya-mtso'i snying-po*), a summary of the *vinaya* teachings by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

8 How the Vows of Freedom are Lost

रियो.स.कर.स्थल.बंदे.सूट.ट्र.। ।शक्ष्य.योश्चल.वेट.यट.ज्य.योश्चेश.बीद्रा ।यश्चय.त.सेल.यट.ज्ये.ज्य्च.यट.। ।र्जूश.त.योर्ट्रेट.यद्व.श्चे.ज.योश्चा

The causes for losing your vows are two. Those shared are returning, dying and moving, Both organs appearing, changing three times, And cutting the very root of virtue.

क्र-ताः क्षेत्रं व्याः त्रः क्षेत्रायः द्रम्याः व्यान्त्रं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्रं व्यान्त्यान्त्रं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यान्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्त्यं व्यान्य

The *two causes for losing your vows are* the shared causes for losing any of the eight types of individual freedom vows, and the unique causes for losing certain ones of them. The *shared causes* for losing any of the vows are the following:

returning your vows by pronouncing the words of the ritual for returning them, where you say "I give back my vows..." and so on in the presence of a fully-ordained monk or the like;

dying and moving on to your next birth;

having both male and female sexual organs appear on you simultaneously;

changing sexes three times;

or cutting the very root of your virtue by holding wrong views.

क्षायाध्यायाध्या

The unique causes for losing certain ones of the vows are explained in these lines:

Finding out that you're not twenty, Agreeing to have, and the end of a day; These the respective unique for full monks And nuns, intermediate nuns, and one-day.

यायकाक्रीः क्र्रंश्वाः विश्वात्त्रक्षेत्रः याद्र्यां व्यक्षेत्रः याद्र्याः व्यक्षेत्रः याद्र्यः याद्रः याद्र्यः याद्यः याद्र्यः याद्र्यः

The unique causes for losing the vows of a fully-ordained monk, an intermediate nun, and a one-day vow are, respectively, the following three:

not being twenty years old when you took full monk's vows, but thinking you were as you did, and then later *finding out that* you weren't twenty, while *you're* still *not twenty* (here the time spent in the womb is included in the twenty);

agreeing to have sex with a man;

and *the end*ing *of a day* (that is, one 24-hour period), which is the amount of time that you committed to keep the vow.

9 The Benefits of Keeping Your Vows

ब्रियःयरः प्रयोरः ब्रेशः योशीटशः पदः द्वीरः । । श्वरः श्वेयाः प्रयेशः यीः यीरः श्वेयः योशीशः । । योष्ट्रशः सः प्रयोगः प्रयोगः योशीशः । | ब्रूशः सः प्रेः प्रयोग्यशीरशः सः तथा।

It is stated that, from keeping these vows, One attains the temporal result of birth As a pleasure being or human; and as An ultimate result three enlightenments.

यशिरमा ह्रास्तर त्यीर स्विमाम् स्विमाम् स्विमाम् स्वास्त्र स्वास

Many times, throughout all of the open and secret teachings of the Buddha and their commentaries, it is stated that if one keeps properly the eight types of individual freedom vows which I have just described, then he or she attains the temporal result of a higher birth as a pleasure being or human, as well as the ultimate result of "definite good"—which refers to one of the three kinds of enlightenment: the enlightenment of the listener, the enlightenment of the Self-Made Buddhas, and the unsurpassable state of total Enlightenment.

The word "discipline" in the title of this text has a particular meaning. The subject matter of the section of the canon which treats discipline is that morality which involves giving up the seven actions, along with what is associated with them. This morality "disciplines" or tames the mental afflictions, and also acts to "discipline" or control the senses. This then is why the subject is known as "discipline."

The Ripened Consequences of the Ten Bad Deeds

The following selections are taken from the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim chen-mo)*, written by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419).

Now each one of the ten paths of karma can itself be divided into three kinds—lesser, medium, and greater—depending on the intensity of the three poisons. The *Main Stage of Levels* states that, from the ten greater instances of killing and the rest, one is born into the hells. It says that from medium instances of each of the ten you take birth as an insatiable spirit; and from the ten lesser instances, you are born as an animal.

The Consistent Consequences of the Ten Bad Deeds

The "consistent" consequences are as follows. Even if you do manage to escape the realms of misery and take birth as a human, the following respective results occur to you:

- 1) Your life is short.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on.
- 3) You have problems keeping your partner from others.
- 4) People don't believe what you say, even when you're telling the truth.
- 5) You lose friends easily.
- 6) You hear things as bad sounds.
- 7) No one listens to you.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire.
- 9) Your personality is dominated by anger.
- 10) Your personality is dominated by stupidity.

र्ट्या चार्च क्षेट्र चार्ल क्षुं चार्च क्षुं चार्च क्षुं चार्च क्षुं चार्च क्षुं चार्च क्ष्य चार्च चार्य चार्च चार्य चार्च चार्य चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्च चार्य चा

The Chapter on the True and the Sutra on the Ten Levels state that there are two such consequences for each of the ones given here; even if you do manage to take birth as a human,

- 1) Your life is short, and you get sick easily.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on, and what you do have is all just common property with others.
- 3) The people who work around you are "inconsistent," which here means unreliable, and you find yourself having a lot of competition for your partner.
- 4) No one believes what you say, even when you are speaking the truth, and others are always deceiving you.
- 5) The people around you are always fighting against one another, and have an undesirable character.
- 6) You hear many unpleasant things, and when others talk to you it always seems to you as if they want to start a fight.
- 7) No one respects what you say—no one thinks that what you say has any particular value, and you are afflicted with a lack of confidence.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire, and you are never satisfied with what you have.
- 9) You are always finding yourself without help, or never find the help you need; and you are always hurting others, or always being hurt by others.
- 10) You become a person who keeps harmful views, or a deceitful person.

च्याः प्राचित्राम् अश्वराष्ट्री त्या स्वाप्ता स

Great lamas of the past have expressed the position that the "consistent" consequence is where, even if you do manage to take birth as a human, you enjoy killing things, and so on. They say then that experiencing the various results just listed is a "ripened" consequence [the second *rgyu mthun* here is likely a text error for *rnam smin*; this is the corrected reading].

The Environmental Consequences of the Ten Bad Deeds

य्यास्त्रः क्ष्यः स्वरः स्वरः

Next is what we call the "environmental" or "dominant" consequence. Here for example the consequence of killing expresses itself in the outer world around you. Food, drink, medicine, the crops in the fields, and other such things have very little power; they are always inferior; they have little nutrition or potency; they are hard to digest, and they cause disease in you. Because of this the majority of the living beings around you die before reaching the end of a full life.

Because you have stolen, then the crops are few and far between; the crops have no power to remove hunger; they spoil; they never come up; dry spells stay on too long; it rains too much; the crops dry up, or die off.

र्यवाग्वाधेमञ्जेहो। यथरावाद्यार्थरत्याह्मयात्रा

Because you have done wrong sex, you live in a place where there is urine and feces all around, and mud and dirt and filth, and everything stinks, and everywhere seems unpleasant and distasteful.

ליקבין

Because you have lied, you live in a world where, when you undertake farming or some work in cooperation with other people, in the end the work fails to prosper, and the people can't work well together, and for the most part everyone is cheating one another, and is afraid, and where there are many things to be afraid of.

Because you have split people up with your talk, the very ground in the place you live is all uneven, covered with crags and gullies, full of highs and lows, so that you can travel only with difficulty, and where you are always afraid, and there are many things to be afraid of.

द्याश्चर्यते कुष्यर्थे कुष्यर्थे क्ष्यं व्याप्त क्ष्यं प्राप्त क्ष्यं क

Because you have spoken harsh words, the ground where you live is covered with obstacles like the trunks of fallen trees, and thorns, and stones, and clods of dirt, and lots of sharp broken pieces of glass; it's rough, and dreary; no streams, or lakes, or springs of water; the whole earth is parched, poisoned with salt and borax, burning hot, useless, threatening; a place where there are many things to fear.

क्यायमाहिटाचु कुम्मान्यादा स्थाय प्राप्त स्थाय प्राप्त स्थाय स्था

Because you have talked meaninglessly, fruits refuse to grow on the trees, or they start to grow at the wrong times, never at the right times, and seem ripe when they're still not ripe, or their roots are frail, or they can't stay long; there are no places to take your leisure, no parks, no glades, no pools of cool water, and many things around to make you afraid.

यद्रवासेस्रसःग्रीदि। सुद्रासुस्रस्रित्रःविदायायस्य स्वरादितः विदायस्य स्वराद्य स्वराद्य स्वराद्य स्वराद्य स्वर

Because you have coveted what others have, then each and every good thing you ever manage to find starts to get worse, and less and less, never more, each one of them, with the passing of each of the four season, and in every month, and even day by day.

मुद्दर्शस्त्रस्त्रभ्याः स्त्रित्रः प्रद्रप्ताः प्रद्रप्तः स्त्रम् स्त्रस्त्रः स्त्रम् स्त्रस्त्रः स्त्रम् स्त्रम्

Because you have wished bad things on others, you live in a world of chaos, where diseases spread, and evil is everywhere, and plague, and conflict, and fear from the armies of other nations; where there are many lions or leopards or other dangerous animals; where there are everywhere venomous snakes or scorpions or poison biting worms; surrounded by harmful spirits, and thieves or muggers, and the like.

यदी-यर-क्रूट-य-द्रिश्योः विद्याः हेत्र-त-द्रश्चित्र-याः विद्याः विद्य

Because you have held wrong views, then you live in a world where the single highest source of happiness is steadily disappearing from the earth; a world where people think that things that are unclean and things that are suffering are actually nice, and happy; a world where there is no place to go, no one to help, nothing to protect you.

The Special Features of the Teachings on the Steps of the Path (the Lam Rim)

The following selections are taken from the *Song of My Spiritual Life (Nyammgur)* of Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). This text is also known as *The Short Book on the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim bsdus-don)*. Accompanying the verses of Je Tsongkapa's root text is a commentary called *Illumination of the Essence (Snying-po mdor-bsdus gsal-ba)*, composed by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748).

प्रमुद्धः प्रमुदः प्रमुद्धः प्रमुद्धः प्रमुद्धः प्रमुद्धः प्रमुद्धः प्रमुद्

totally lack inconsistency,

And His highest of speech will strike you as personal advice.

You will easily find the true intent of the Victorious Buddhas,

And be protected from falling into the chasm of the great mistake.

|गिर्नेशयादी| वसूनयाश्रमश्रदायम्यासेन्स्मिन्यान्ते से। नेप्रानुदेगानुन वर्नेने। ह्युनःकेंबाःबायाः चार्वे प्रमायाः वर्ने वायाः वर्ने वर्णे नमः केंशः र्द्ध्यः हें स्क्षेत्रः रेवाः वासुद्रयः यः ब्रस्यशः उत्यय। वः रेवाः देः यसः श्रीः वार्देः वे। [यःउँयाः तैः नेत्रेः प्यतः त्ययाः क्षेत्रः तीनः तुन् । तीनः तन् त्यः नर्देशः नरः यक्तुनः यः छैः नेयानः ग्रीः क्षे वर्षायर्वर कु'नरें क'मुवर र्'में नर य्युर नर्षा नर्ष्ट्र यात्र वर्षा नर्ष्ट्र यात्र वर्षा वर्ष्ट्र वर्षा वर्ष 5. हेर्ग्यायाय के के प्राप्त अर्दे स्वाया ग्री मासुर र प्राप्त स्वया प्राप्त स्व वर्ग्रेयामुं, पश्रूष, पर्रुषा इसमायवित क्रिया र्यं या नुष्य द्वार वसा क्रमा शुर्वे प्रेत्र सुर् वो देव त्यरा वालव लेवा व र्षेट प्यर वहेव पवे र्षेवा हेवा इसरा सेवा हो। रव-रविद्रशादवीय-र्दावरुश-पदि-विद्याः अद्यव-रवा-१४४४-शु-वीद-वी-वी-रो ८८.८ह्याः श्रेंशः ३.५यामः ग्रेःश्लें.यमानमानमान्त्रात्त्राः त्यां भारत्यात्रा বার্ধুদ্দের্ঘরমঝান্তর্বাব্মঝান্ত্রমান য়য়য়৾৽ঽ৴য়ৢঀয়য়৽ৼয়৽য়৾৽য়৾ঌ৾য়৽ড়৾য়৽য়ৢৼয়৾য়৽য়ৣৼয়৽য়য়৾৽য়য়৽ৼৼ৾য়৾য়য়৽ वाबुदःके'व'दे'दवा'वो'दवेदिश'देंब'रदः क्षेत्रशामुशादेवाशादशाद्वश्यशासुः योदःसे

त्युः ब्रुरः र्र्।

शुः त्युः र्र्याः व्रुपः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः व्रुपः व्र्याः व्रुपः वरुपः वरुपः

This teachings possesses four special features, or you could say four great qualities. The first is that if you rely on this teaching *you will* come to *realize that all of the Buddha's teachings* are *totally lacking* any *inconsistency*. Of all the teachings spoken by the Victorious Buddhas, however many there may be, some of them teach the principal paths and others teach that which branches off from them. Once you know this, you will come to understand that they are all either direct or indirect factors in reaching enlightenment.

You will not have the wrong view which considers the open and secret teachings of the Buddha—those highest of all words—and the classical commentaries which comment upon their true intent to be mere explanations. You will not think that you have to look somewhere other than in the content of these books for something to use for your personal practice. Rather you will come to see that the entire subject matter of the Buddha's supreme speech along with its classical commentaries is perfectly in keeping with the progressive structure through which you do your actual practice. You will come to understand how it is that every step from taking yourself to a Spiritual Guide all the way up to the practices of developing quietude and special vision can be put into your personal practice, either through analytical meditation or through fixation meditation.

If you understand these points, then all of the *high speech* of the Buddha *will strike you as personal advice*. This is the second of the great qualities. Even though all of the teachings of the Buddha are the ultimate form of personal instruction, us spiritual beginners who haven't studied enough are unable to understand the true intent of the great scriptures on our own, nor are we able to bring them into our personal practice. Therefore we need to rely on something like this teaching on the steps of the path to enlightenment, through which our Lamas give us their personal advice on the true meaning of these original works.

This makes it *easy* for us to grasp *the true intent of the Victorious Buddhas*, and that is another great quality of the teaching on the steps. Once you *find* this true intent, you will understand that every word the Buddha ever said contributes either directly or indirectly to our reaching enlightenment, and that there is not a single word He spoke which does not teach a method of achieving enlightenment.

In the Buddha's teachings there can appear to be some slight inconsistencies, which are required due to the needs of particular disciples, and there are also distinctions between the higher and lower teachings. But there is no difference between any of them from the point of view that they were all taught solely as methods for reaching enlightenment. If you become certain of this, you will never commit the bad deed of rejecting Buddhist teachings, and will thus be protected from falling into the chasm of that great mistake. This is the last of the four great qualities.

15 Finding a Teacher

|दे, ब्रम् तर्ने से वे, से व, त्रम् त्रम्

।इयः वर्देन हिन्गुर ने पत्रियः वर्ष्यः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः वर्षेयः

After having done this, see that the very foundation

Of an excellent start for all the good in this and your future lives

Is the holy Spiritual Guide who teaches you the path.

Make efforts to rely on Him properly in your thoughts and in your actions; Please Him with the offering of carrying out His every instruction.

And never give it up, not even at the cost of your life.

I, the master meditator, lived my life this way; You, who seek for freedom, must try to do the same.

First you must contemplate the points above, such as the great benefits that come from putting into practice all, or even just a part of, the steps of the path. *After having done this*, says Je Tsongkapa, you should begin the actual practices which are to follow. He uses these words to lead the reader into the actual steps of the path.

चयुःचर्षुश्वाक्षेत्रः नश्चरः विश्वायरः चिश्वात्ते। यचरः यः द्वाः सः व्यक्षेत्रः स्त्रेतः व्यक्षेत्रः यद्वेयाः यदः प्रत्यः सः व्यक्षेत्रः यदः स्त्रः व्यक्षेत्रः यदः व्यक्षेत्रः यदः स्त्रः स्त्रः यदः स्त्रः स्त्रः

प्रवित् नुः श्चीतः परिः सर्के न्यायाः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः

Having understood these benefits, you must then see that the holy Spiritual Guide who teaches you the path is the very foundation for getting you off to an excellent start for all the good in this and your future lives. Realize that all this depends on how you serve your Lama, and then with fierce efforts rely on Him in your thoughts by stopping that state of mind which thinks it sees faults in Him, and by developing feelings of faith towards Him as much as you can.

Rely *properly* on your Lama *in your actions* by paying Him respect with your body, praising Him with your words, and so forth. Undertake whatever you can to please your Lama in every possible way, and never undertake anything which would displease Him. Accomplish whatever He or She tells you to do.

Understanding this, you must *please* your Lama with the offering of carrying out His every instruction. You can never give this up even at the cost of you life, so what need is there to say anything about mere small incidents?

15 The Contemplation on Death

१हेन-नगवःवहियाः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः विद्याः वि

।য়য়৽ঀঀৣ৾য়৽য়য়য়৽ঀৢয়য়৽ঀৢয়য়৽ঀয়ৣয়৽ ।য়য়৽ঀঀৣ৾য়৽য়য়য়৽ঀৢয়য়৽ঀয়ৣয়৽ঀয়ৢয়৽ঀয়৻ঀৢ৾য়৽

This life's difficult to find, and easily destroyed, like lightning in the sky.

Think this over carefully and come to realize:

All the activities of the world are chaff blown in the wind.

To take the essence of this life, you must strive night and day.

I, the master meditator, lived my life this way; You, who seek for freedom, must try to do the same.

17 The Contemplation on the Lower Realms

१विवस्य द्वार्यम् रस्रे क्रीके विषय

There is no guarantee that after you die you won't be born in the lower realms.

शर्रियायश्वाश्वाश्वा विद्यास्त्रियः वास्त्रीः स्वरायः वास्त्रायः वास्त्रायः वास्त्रायः विद्यास्त्रीः विद्यास्त्रीः विद्यास्त्रायः विद्यास्त्रयः विद्यास्य विद्यास्त्यास्त्रयः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यास्त्यः विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्य विद्यास्य विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्य विद्यास्य विद्यास्त्यः विद्यास्य विद्यास्य वि

यदः यहेन् स्वाप्त स्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

Not only is it true that you are impermanent and must die, but *after you die* you must take birth exactly where your white and black deeds throw you. Good deeds throw you into the higher realms and bring you experiences of happiness, whereas bad deeds throw you into the lower realms and bring you experiences of suffering.

As you haven't been able to accumulate many causes to be born in the higher realms, but have rather collected many causes to be born in the lower realms, there is *no guarantee* that in your next life *you will not born in* the hells or *the* other *lower realms*. Not only is there no guarantee that you will not be born there, in all likelihood you will be born there. Contemplate again and again the sufferings of the lower realms, and try to develop a very strong desire to be free from them.

18 The Four Forces

Polluted by downfalls and the stench of bad deeds committed through all three doors,

It's crucial to purify yourself, especially of the obstacles these deeds create.

You must then with great reverence depend on the four forces, continually.

I, the master meditator, lived my life this way; You, who seek for freedom, must try to do the same.

19 The Four Truths

If you don't make efforts to contemplate
what's wrong with the truth of suffering,
You won't be able to develop as your should
the aspiration to be free.
And if you don't think of how the truth of the source
throws you into the cycle of life,
Then you won't understand the way to cut
the cycle of suffering from its root.

From the very beginning, those who wish to free themselves from cyclic existence must contemplate what's wrong with the truth of suffering and the truth of the source of suffering. *The truth of suffering* includes both the general sufferings of the three lower realms and the higher realms, as well as the specific sufferings of birth, old age, aging, sickness, death, and so on.

If you don't make great efforts to contemplate what's wrong with this cycle of suffering, then you will not get any great wish to be free from suffering, and you will not be able to develop the state of mind in which you aspire toward freedom in the way that you should.

You must understand the details of the nature of desire and the other (mental afflictions), and how they develop, because if you don't think about how the truth of the source of suffering acts to throw you into the cycle of life, then you won't understand how to cut the very root of the cycle of suffering. It would be like shooting an arrow at a target you can't see.

20 The Truth of Suffering

|श्रेत्रायशादेशावनुदार्श्केष्ट्रायशायहरूपात्रा

With a solid disgust for this existence that definitely wants to get out,

विश्वास्त्रः चित्। विश्वास्त्रः चित्। विश्वास्त्रः चित्रः चित्

Look at all of the suffering in this circle of life; look at birth, aging, sickness and death, at grief and crying out in pain, at our mental unhappiness, at the heat and the cold, all the fighting, and on and on. Then *with a* fierce and *solid*

disgust for this existence that definitely wants to get out of the cycle of suffering you must try to understand the cause which creates this suffering, as it will be explained later in the text.

The Truth of the Source of Suffering

वित्रं स्वरं वित्रण्यः विश्वः स्वरं स्वरं

Finding out about this suffering cycle should be treated with great concern.

I, the master meditator, put this into practice; You, who seek for freedom, must try to practice this way.

श्रानियोत्याद्मात्रीय्याद्मात्रीयात

Finding out about what chains you to this suffering cycle should be treated as something extremely important and with great concern. You are chained by both your deeds and your bad thoughts. If we were to divide these out into all of their different forms, there would be a great many of them. To state it in a nutshell, the mental afflictions in the mindstream of a common person—that is, desire, anger, pride, ignorance, bad forms of doubt, jealousy, and so on—are all the truth of the source of suffering in the form of mental afflictions, and the deeds which are motivated by them—both virtuous and non-virtuous—are the truth of the source of suffering in the form of deeds.

भद्रःभर्ष्यात्यात्यः महेत्रः त्र्याः योत्रायः त्री गुत्रः वर्तुमः वर्त्वः वर्ष्यः म्याः विद्याः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः

It is mainly because of our ignorance that we collect these deeds, and it is because of the deeds themselves that we are thrown into the cycle of life. We must gain a good understanding of all the steps in the twelve links of dependent origination, through which this process takes place.

To put it briefly, you must rely on the personal instructions of a spiritual guide, and thus come to realize how it is that your deeds and your bad thoughts make you circle around in this cycle of life. Then you will understand the truth of the source—the process through which you are thrown into cyclic life.

The Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

|र्यायमुस्यान्त्रेत्वार्याक्ष्याः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्यान्त्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्रेत्वाः स्वार्यान्त्यान्त्याः स्वार्यान्त्याः स्वार्यान्त्यान्त्यान्त्यान्याः स्वार्यान्यान्त्यान्यात्वाः स्वार्यान्त्यात्वाः स्वार्यान्त्यात्याः स्व

The wish for enlightenment is the central beam which holds up the supreme way's path;
It's also the foundation and the basis of a bodhisattva's mighty activity.
It is like the elixir of an alchemist for both of the two great masses,
And a treasury of merit containing the collections of a myriad number of virtues.

23 The Perfection of Giving

।श्चेत्र-पत्तेः य्यावाका-पार्श्विवाका-पर्श्व-प्रविद्यः स्त्रीया-पत्तेः यावि। ।श्चेत्र-श्चेत्वः स्त्रीत्यः याञ्चेत्-पत्तेः स्राक्षेत्वः स्वर्थः स्त्रीत्वाः स्वर्थः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीत्वाः स्वर्थः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीत्वः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीः स्तिः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्रीत्वाः स्त्र

Giving is a wish-giving jewel
that fulfils the hopes of living kind;
It is highest of all swords
for cutting the knot of stinginess,
And the deed for children of the Victors
that gives them courage undaunted,
The cause that brings their good name
to be sung in the ten directions.

विर वर्द्द निर्णार दे प्रक्षित वर्षेत वर्षेत्र वर्य वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्य वर्षेत्र वर्य वर्य वर्षेत्र वर्य वर्य वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्य वर्षेत्र वर्य वर

Because they understand this point,
wise ones follow the excellent path
Of giving away everything that they own:
their bodies, possessions, and goodness.

I, the master meditator,
put this into practice;
You, who seek for freedom, must
try to practice this way.

24 The Perfection of an Ethical Life

।क्रॅचर्याणीयायक्षेत्रायायायायः त्याः त्याः त्याः विद्याः विद

The ethical life is water that cleans
the stink of bad deeds away;

It's light from the moon that dissipates
the tormenting heat of bad thoughts.

It stands majestic like Mount Supreme
at the center of millions of beings;

Its power makes all living kind bow
at your feet, with never a threat.

Because they understand this point, holy ones undertake to shield Their purely ethical way of life as well as they would their eyes.

I, the master meditator,
put this into practice;
You, who seek for freedom, must
try to practice this way.

25 The Perfection of Not Getting Angry

क्रियाः स्ट्रियः मक्रुवः यः सं यदः म्याः कः स्रोवाः वितः । वि स्ट्रियः य्याः वर्षेत्रः द्याः यः वसः स्रायवः क्रेटः। वि स्ट्रियः यदितः यदः द्याः यः स्वयः ग्रीवः श्रीः स्वया। वि स्ट्रियः स्ट्रियः विवः स्वयः यो वः श्रीः सर्वयः। वि स्ट्रियः स्ट्रियः स्वयः स्वयः यो वः श्रीः सर्वयः।

Not getting angry is the supreme jewel
that adorns individuals of power;
It is the ultimate austerity
for those tormented by mental afflictions,
And a skyglider against the enemy
of the palmwalker, anger itself.
It's armor that's strong against
the weapon of words spoken harsh.

[The word "palmwalker" is a poeticism for the snake, so called because they travel on their flat bellies. It stands here for the naga creatures, mortal enemies of the mythical garuda bird, here referred to as "skygliders."]

विरः विरः विरः यो द्वा स्त्रीयः विराधितः विराधि

Because they understand this point, the holy practice wearing This highest armor of not getting angry in a wide variety of ways.

I, the master meditator,
put this into practice;
You, who seek for freedom, must
try to practice this way.

26 The Perfection of Effort

|याद्यस्थरायस्य प्राण्डे स्वत्यस्य स्वर्ण्या । स्विद्यस्य स्वर्ण्य स्वर्ण स्वर्य

If you are able to don the armor
of firm and unstoppable effort,

Then qualities of scripture and realization
will increase like the waxing moon.

All that you do throughout the day
will turn to something meaningful,

And you'll find that you complete as you hoped
whatever task you undertake.

Because they understand this point, the children of the Victors exert Great and effective effort that clears all laziness away from them.

27 The Perfection of Meditation

|यश्वामात्रवास्त्रेश्वामात्रवास्त्रेष्ट्

Meditation is a king
who rules the realm of the mind;
When you place it on an object,
it stays unmoving, like the Lord of Mountains;
When you send it out it sinks
into every virtuous entity;
And it brings to body and mind
great bliss of practiced ease.

विरायित्रायित्यार्थे स्थायित्राय्ये स्थायित्या विष्यायित्या विषया विषया

Because they understand this point, those lords among deep practitioners Rely in a steady stream on that concentration which destroys the enemy of distraction.

28 The Perfection of Wisdom

|विश्वास्त्राच्याक्षेत्रः हेत्रः हित्तः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्व

Wisdom is an eye that allows you to see
the profound state of suchness,
And a path that tears from its very root
the cycle of suffering life.
It's a goldmine of spiritual qualities
praised in every holy book,
And renowned as the highest lamp
for lighting the darkness of ignorance.

विरादित्विर्याद्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्याः विष्णाविष्णात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य

Because they understand this point, wise ones who wish for freedom Undertake to forge this path with a multitude of efforts.

29 Combining Meditative Quietude and the Extraordinary Vision of Emptiness

। से प्रारेग प्रमासम्बद्धाः प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त । । सः या गर्रेर प्रयो तुषाया या अर्थेर विदा <u>|ଜି'বারশ'ঝয়'ব্র'বুঝ'বর'বৢয়'মব'শূমা</u> <u>। ই রম ব্যুব শূর্ম র্র্বর র্ম ব্যুর্ রা বর্ষা</u> । এব:র্বাশর্রমার্কর মর্বর বিশ্বস্থর ।वार्थे सेर ले वादशह वा वर्जे द दश है। । মহব ব্রথ ব্রু মবি ই বাশ ঘব মর্টির র্ট্র সূথ। । মারম 'বেইর 'ব্যাবাধা'বার্দির রাম্যান্তর 'বেইবা'রীর 'মারী। ।র্কুঝ'বজ্লীর'ব্র্যুর্'মবর অেন্ডা'মব'শীরু। । दे[.] केदः ह्रें या श्रायदे । ह्रें व्यें श्रास्त्र श्रायदे । श्रायदे । <u>।</u>
রূঅ'বর্ত্র-'দ্র'শূদ'ন্তমম'ঝর'ন্'ভূদ'নগ্রীমা विरायित्याराने प्रविदायम्

It's impossible that single-pointed concentration by itself could ever have

The power to cut the very root of the cycle of suffering life;

And wisdom which is separated from the path of quietude

Could never stop your mental afflictions, no matter how much you analyzed.

Mount then the wisdom that rips apart the reality of how things are

On the horse of meditative quietude that cannot ever sway.

Next use the razor sword of the logic
of the middle way free of extremes
To destroy all tendencies to think
in a way that holds an extreme.
Take this far-spreading wisdom that examines
things in the proper way
To bring the knowledge that perceives simple suchness
to prosper ever further.

I, the master meditator,
put this into practice;
You, who seek for freedom, must
try to practice this way.

विरादर्ग्नावियान्य साम्याय स्वाद्धः स्वाद्यः स्वाद्धः स्वादः स

The path that's commended for reaching
the perfection of the deeds of the children
Of the Victors is combining the two
of method and wisdom having meditated
On both the emptiness of absorption,
the one like empty space,
And the emptiness of the aftermath:
the one like an illusion.
The way of those blessed by goodness
is to understand this fact,
And never be satisfied with only
a piece or a part of the path.

I, the master meditator, put this into practice; You, who seek for freedom, must try to practice this way.

30
The Path of the Secret Way

|मम्बर्ग्नरम्भेद्र-प्रम्थःम्बर्ग्न्यःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्ग्नःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर् |हिःप्रविषःप्रभेद्रिन्द्रमःम्बर्गःमद्वःद्वर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम्बर्गःम

वियान्य न्या स्ट्रिंट क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

First then develop, just so, the path
that's shared, that's needed for both
The supreme paths of the greater way:
the one of cause, and the one of result.
After that take yourself to your savior,
to that master captain of the ship,
And enter the mighty ocean of
the classes of secret teaching,
Then drinking of the fullness
of the advices of this tradition,
Making the fact that you've attained
this leisure and fortune meaningful.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Nine: The Bodhisattva's Way of Life, First of Six Parts

The following story recounts in brief some of the events in the life of the great bodhisattva Shantideva. It is a paraphrase of sections from the *Life Stories of the Lineage Teachers of the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim bla-ma brgyud-pa'i rnam-thar)* written by Yongdzin Yeshe Gyeltsen (1713-1793), the teacher of the eighth Dalai Lama.

1 The Life of Master Shantideva, in Brief

Master Shantideva was born to the west of Bodhgaya, the Seat of the Diamond, in a place called Yulkor Mosang. His father was a king named Armor of Virtue, and his mother was said to be an emanation of Vajra Yogini, the Angel of Diamond. He was able to choose the details of his birth, and when he was born he was given the name Armor of Peace. In his childhood he had all the favorable conditions that he needed, and from his earliest age he revealed himself to be a master of the traditional philosophical and other sciences. When he was six years old he met a great practitioner of the secret teachings, and received an initiation and a practice for reaching the enlightened being named Manjushri, or Gentle Voice. As a child he made great efforts in this practice, doing its meditations and reciting its secret words, and was soon able to meet Gentle Voice himself. After meeting this holy being, Master Shantideva was able to receive many teachings from him directly.

When his father the King passed away, all the people of the land requested Prince Shantideva to be King. Because he had practiced the bodhisattva path in many previous lives, he had no desire to live a life of royalty, but so as not to upset the people he agreed. The night before his crowning ceremony though he had a dream. In the dream he saw Gentle Voice sitting on the King's throne, and He said, "Son, this is my seat and I am your Teacher. It would be improper for us to sit on the same seat." Upon waking he realized that it was wrong for him to enjoy the pleasures of owning a kingdom, and he ran away.

Master Shantideva first went to Nalandra Monastery where he met the supreme leader of all the learned scholars there. His name was Angel of Virtue, and from this teacher he took the commitment to leave the home life. It also was from this master that he received the name Shantideva, which means "Angel of Peace." At the monastery he served his preceptor well, studied the three collections of scripture, and became a great scholar. He continued to receive many teachings from Gentle Voice himself, and was able to grasp the meaning of all the Buddha's teachings, both open and secret. He eliminated all the different kinds of distraction, both inner and outer, and with this incredible focus of mind he reached a very high spiritual level. He then composed the works entitled the Compendium of Trainings, the Compendium of the Sutras, and other books which describe the amazingly powerful and effective way of the life of a bodhisattva. Master Shantideva perfected within himself the three characteristics of a great Buddhist master—teaching, debating, and writing—and continued to rise up all the spiritual levels and paths. He achieved the ability to remember everything he had ever been taught, the ability to perform miracles effortlessly, and incredible clairvoyance; thus he became a god among bodhisattvas.

This was his inner life, but to the eyes of impure people Shantideva seemed to be interested in only three things: eating, sleeping, and going to the toilet. He thus became known by the name Bhusuku, which means "Mister Three Thoughts." Because the only fitting activity for a man who has left the home life is to involve himself in teaching, some of the monks who could not see who he really was perceived Master Shantideva as someone who was just living off the kindness of the laypeople, and decided that they should expel him from the monastery. They asked him to recite a scripture from memory before a gathering of the monastery, hoping that their request would cause him to decide to leave on his own. He answered them by saying, "How could someone like me ever be able to recite scripture?" and declined. However they insisted that he do so, and eventually he agreed.

The entire monastery was then invited to this gathering, and a very high throne was set up, one without any stairs—so there was no way for anyone to climb atop it. But when the bodhisattva Shantideva reached the front of the throne, he touched it gently, and without the slightest effort he appeared sitting on top of it. He then asked and said, "Would you like me to recite something you have heard before, or something which you have never heard?" The assembly asked that he recite something that they had not heard before, and so he began to recite that book which we call the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.* He began at the very beginning of the text, and by the time he had gotten about a third of the way through the ninth chapter he began to rise up into the sky. He rose higher and higher, and it seemed as though the sky and his knowledge were pitted in competition, until he could no longer be seen at all, only heard. Then he totally disappeared.

Later on some of the monks who had clairvoyance of the ear, and others who were masters of total recall, pieced the whole book together. The group who were from Kashmir said that it had nine chapters, and the group from central India said it had ten. People then began to get curious about two of his other books which were mentioned in the fifth chapter of the *Guide*, and so they sent two monks to the place where Master Shantideva was living. They travelled to a stupa in the south of India called Pelyun Chen to invite him to come back to Nalandra. The master refused to come, but he did tell them that the people from central India were correct, and that the two books they sought could be found written in tiny letters hidden in the rafters of his old room at the monastery. He then gave these monks a complete explanation of the both the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* and the *Compendium of Trainings*.

Later Master Shantideva was wondering what he could do to help others, and so he decided to check with his clairvoyance. He saw in the east a great many people whose lives were disturbed by a terrible dispute and, seeing that he could help, set off in their direction. While he was there he acted as the opponent of the great argument maker who was causing all the trouble, and with his great powers he was able to bring everyone back together.

He then thought to himself, "What further could I do to benefit people?" The idea then came to him that he should travel to the kingdom of Magada in order to help the people living there who had fallen into the chasm of wrong views. When he arrived, he found a great many people who had extremely weird wrong views, and he decided to stay with them for some time. One day, due to his extraordinary power and to the purity of the prayers these people had made in their past lives, there occurred an enormous blizzard. The storm lasted for seven days, and the community ran out of food and drink. They began to go crazy, and decided that whoever was able to come up with something to eat and drink would become their leader. The bodhisattva Shantideva was miraculously able to fill a single alms bowl with rice, and from it fed everybody in the community. As their leader he was then able to demolish their wrong views, and lead them into the Buddha's teachings.

Master Shantideva next checked with his clairvoyance to see who else needed help. He saw many people suffering from a famine, in desperate need of help, and thousands about to die. He provided these people with sustenance, taught them the teachings of the Buddha, and thus brought them to happiness.

Then the great bodhisattva thought to himself, "What could I do to help the teachings of the Buddha?" He saw that if he were to assist a certain king it would aid many people. He journeyed to the crossroads near his palace, and began to assess the situation. He found a great crowd of mighty, but merciless people. There were a lot of them gathered already, and many others like them on their way. These people were aware of the king's great wealth, and this fact was causing the king much distress. He thought that if he were to use all of

his wealth to pay off these people, then having obtained the kingdom would be of no point; but also that if he did not, then they would surely separate his mind from his body. Master Shantideva took a liking to the king, and arranged to be his bodyguard. Because he had limitless power and might, he was able to overpower all of the evil people, and put the king and his people at ease. During all this time Master Shantideva had no weapon other than a single wooden sword, a sword resembling the sword of Gentle Voice.

The whole kingdom began to develop great faith and respect for Master Shantideva, and made many offerings to him. But there was one man who was very jealous of him, and could not bear all of his success. He went to the king and told him that Master Shantideva was a devious man. He told the king that Shantideva had nothing more then a wooden sword, and that he would never be able to protect him if anything happened. He said to the king, "This man is a deceiving you. Even his sword is nothing more than wood, and so he could never be able to guard your body"; and advised the king to investigate. The king became angered, went to Master Shantideva, and told him to take his sword out of its scabbard. The bodhisattva replied saying, "Your Highness will be hurt if I do so," but the king told him to do it anyway, whether it hurt him or not. Master Shantideva then said to him, "I agree then to take it out, but I advise Your Highness to cover one of your eyes. The king covered one eye as instructed, and when the great bodhisattva pulled out the sword, it blazed with such a light that the king's exposed eye was blinded. The King apologized, took refuge in Master Shantideva, and entered into the teachings of the Buddha.

After this Master Shantideva thought to himself, "What next can I do to be of help to others?" He checked with his clairvoyance, and saw there were many non-Buddhists who opposed the Teachings and needed to be subdued. He went to where they lived in the south, and dressed himself as a beggar. One day a servant of the King saw him and noticed that drops of water which touched his body instantly began to boil.

There was a non-Buddhist teacher living in this land who decided that he wanted to compete with a Buddhist in miraculous powers. He made a deal with the king that whoever lost this competition would have to convert to the other's religion, and that the winner could burn all of the monasteries and books of the loser's religion. The King could find no one of the Buddhist community who would agree to these conditions, and he grieved. Then the servant who had seen the miracle with Master Shantideva told him about it. The King sent out messengers to seek him, and to beg for his help in defeating the non-Buddhist teacher.

The bodhisattva Shantideva told them that he would be able to help, and that they should prepare a large bowl of water, two bolts of cloth, and a fire. On the day of the competition the whole kingdom gathered, and a throne was

prepared for the King. The two opponents began their debates, and because of the power of Master Shantideva's reasoning and scriptural knowledge, his opponent was unable to even respond. Because of this he thought he'd try to win with his miraculous powers instead, and so he began to draw the secret world of a powerful Hindu god in the sky. But before he had finished drawing even its eastern side, the bodhisattva Shantideva went into a deep meditation on the element of wind and brought about a great storm which began to tear apart the entire area.

The King, Queen, and the others assembled ran for cover, and the non-Buddhist teacher and his secret world were thrown about in every direction, like sparrows caught in a hurricane. A great darkness descended upon all the land, and Master Shantideva sent rays of light out from a spot between his eyes to light the way for the King and the Queen. Their clothes had been ripped off and they were covered in dust, so the great bodhisattva bathed them in the water from the bowl, dressed them in the cloth, and put them near the fire, where they could warm themselves.

Master Shantideva's activities were exclusively dedicated to the benefit of living beings, and to helping the Buddha's teachings. Everything he did was meant to express the truth of the saying: "Men are like the mango fruit. Sometimes they look ripe on the outside, but are not ripe on the inside. Others are ripe on the inside, but don't look ripe on the outside. Some look and are ripe both inside and out, and others don't look ripe truly are not." For people like us who haven't seen emptiness directly, it is very difficult to judge another's mind. Generally speaking then we should never allow ourselves to think that anyone at all has any bad qualities, and we should realize more specifically that criticizing anyone who has entered the Buddha's teachings is like playing near a pit of embers concealed in ash. It is important that we not criticize other people, and to try to see all things as pure. It is to express this fact that Master Shantideva lived the way that he did.

He also taught us by example many other lessons. Never be satisfied with wrong or partial paths. Train yourself in paths which are complete. Practice what is taught in this bodhisattva's books. If you take Gentle Voice as your personal Angel, you will be able to achieve all wonderful qualities. It isn't fitting to put any faith in books which can't bring you to total enlightenment. The only entry point for those who wish for freedom is the teachings of Enlightened Beings. So if you wish to practice the teachings of the steps of the path to enlightenment, make supplication to this great bodhisattva; and learn about, contemplate, and meditate on his words.

The following selections are taken from the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* (*Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD). The commentary to a number of the selections comes from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, an explanation of Master Shantideva's work by the premier disciple of Je Tsongkapa, Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432).

The Structure of the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

शर्या क्रिया प्रदेश प्रायो में क्रिया प्रायो क्रिया प्रायो क्रिया प्रायो क्रिया प्रायो प्रायो क्रिया प्रायो प्रायो क्रिया क्रिय

This book presents, in their entirety, each one of the steps of the path to enlightenment. It begins by telling you the way to practice the contemplations for people of lesser and medium capacity as an adjunct to practicing the contemplations for people of great capacity. Then it goes on to teach you how to develop the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment, and how—after you have developed that wish—you should train yourself in the perfection of giving, along with the other five perfections.

The first chapter explains how, in the beginning, you must increase your joyful energy to its very highest by thoroughly contemplating the benefits which come from developing the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment. This chapter also touches upon the way you should practice, as an adjunct, the contemplations for people of lesser and medium capacity.

यक्षत्रः भू।

विकार्याः अभ्यान्यः स्त्रः स्

You must go about developing the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment, that wish whose very root is love and compassion, in the same way that you would go about preparing to welcome a King who ruled the entire world by cleaning your house, and so on. You will be able to acquire this wish by purifying all of the factors which obstruct your spiritual realizations, and gathering together the power of good deeds which promote them. These two subjects are covered respectively in the second and third chapters.

पर्विश्वः हो।

यविश्वः हो।

स्वीशः नेटः प्रवास्त्रः विश्वः स्वाः स्वीतः स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वः स्वः स्वः स्वाः स्वः स्वः स

The fourth chapter teaches you why you must be careful once you have developed the wish, so that the good energy you have amassed from training yourself in the activities of a bodhisattva does not degenerate.

The chapters which follow teach you how to put the six perfections into practice. With regard to this, the fifth chapter is devoted to an extensive presentation of how to train yourself to live an ethical life through maintaining your mindfulness and awareness, and the next four chapters are successively devoted to how to train yourself in not getting angry, joyfully doing good deeds, meditative concentration, and wisdom.

हूं र. श्रे विच्या ची अट्या मी अ. ग्री. यो ये अ. क्ष्या जा विच्या ची अट्या मी अप जी जी ये अप जी ची ट. क्ष्या ग्री. ये अप अप जी ची ट. क्ष्या ग्री. ये अप जी ची ट. क्ष्या ग्री. ये अप जी ची ट. प्रायी अप जी अ

The tenth chapter explains in detail how you can learn that attitude which wants to give away to others your own body, all of your possessions, along with every good thing you've ever done. And it teaches you how to sweeten your acts of giving through dedication. Although the tenth chapter treats with great thoroughness how it is that you should train yourself in the perfection of giving, this subject is also taught on other occasions, such as in the chapter on how to develop the wish for enlightenment. The subject of what it is to be a Buddha, which is the final result, is treated in the ninth chapter.

3 The Chapters of the Guide

The names of the ten chapters of the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* are as follows:

I. Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

II. Purifying Bad Deeds

III. Acquiring the Wish for Enlightenment

IV. Using Carefulness



V. Guarding Awareness

डे वर्डेन्यवसूत्रया

VI. Not Getting Angry

v े वर्सेन त्युषायस्न पा

VII. Joyous Effort

८ বশ্বমান্ত্র্বান্ত্র্রান্ত্র

VIII. Meditative Concentration

eे विश्वःस्यःशुःखेदु।

IX. Wisdom

१० वर्झे.घटु.खेटी

X. Dedication

4
What the Buddhas Think is Important

विश्वयःत्वरः द्वस्यः गुरुषः वर्ते क्षेतः यदः या विष्यः। विश्वयः त्वरः द्वस्यः गुरुषः वर्ते क्षेतः यदः या विष्यः।

The Lords among Victors contemplated the question For many millions of years and saw That this alone could be of benefit. Again we can say that making efforts to practice the wish is something which is very right to do. This is because *the Lords among Victors have* considered and *contemplated, for many* "countless" periods of *millions of years* each, *the question of what could be of benefit to,* or a way to achieve the ends of, all living beings. And what they *saw was that this* wish for enlightenment *alone* would be so.

5
Going to Bliss in a Blissful Way

বিদ্বী অর্কু বা বিদ্বী বৃত্তী ক্রি বা বিদ্বার ক্রি বা বিদ্বার বিদ্ধার বিদ্ধার

It is this wish which allows a limitless Mass of sentient kind to attain The highest form of happiness, with ease.

तक्रन्यात्वर स्वा विषयः विषयः

It is this wish for enlightenment which is like a special seed, one that has the power which allows a limitless number of living beings, a great mass of sentient kind, to attain the highest form of happiness. And it allows them to do so with

ease, with perfect ease—that is, without having to undertake any such difficult spiritual practices as undertaking the life of a cave-dwelling yogi. It's just as the lines say which go,

What person with any intelligence at all Would lose heart in going easily to ease?

विर.क्य.श्रम्भ, कुर.स्या.रं.योरट.शु.वी

Those who hope to smash the thousand pains Of the cycle of life, or to solve The unhappiness of every living being, Or bring them to the many thousand forms Of happiness, must never give up This very wish for enlightenment.

विद्याः हेर स्थान्य स

Once they've succeeded in developing
The wish for enlightenment, then even
Those miserable beings chained in the prison
Of cyclic life are in an instant referred to
By Those Gone to Bliss as their very own
Daughters or sons, and are worthy to be bowed to
By the entire world, of men and gods.

| याश्चर त्यार है थि हस या सकें या स्वार्थ हो । से या र्वट त्युर है थि हस या सकें या स्वार्थ हो । से या र्वट त्युर या राष्ट्र ही दिया से या स्वार्थ हो । से या राष्ट्र के या राष्ट्र के

Keep this thing called the "wish for enlightenment" As firmly as you can, for like
The highest form of alchemical elixir
It transforms this filthy body you've taken
To the holy form of a Victorious One,
Of immeasurable value beyond all value.

7
The Goodness of the Wish Goes On Forever

|
\[
\langle \frac{1}{2} \alpha \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}

All other good deeds are like the plantain tree, That gives its fruits and always dies away; The wish for enlightenment though is an evergreen That never dies by giving its fruits, But rather ever increases.

 त्यीर प्रतु हीर रू। विट स्वा तर लिट व्यव्या प्रत्या प्रया प्रया प्रया या स्वा प्रत्या प्रया प्रय प्रया प्रय

Practicing the wish for enlightenment is moreover a right thing to do for those who hope to see their good deeds never die, but increase ever further. This is because all other good deeds, meaning those that are not imbued by this wish, are like the plantain tree: they give their fruits and, once they have done so, it is always the case that their ability to produce further fruits dies away. The wish for enlightenment though is an evergreen: it is like a wish-giving tree, in that it never dies by giving its fruits, but rather ever increases, higher and higher.

चिर-किय-ग्री-श्रीर-म्र.जार्श्वयोग्री-यर-री-श्राः चर्निस्य-प्री-यर्श्वयोग्राः विर-किय-ग्री-श्रीर-प्राः विश्वयोग्य-प्राः विद्याः विद्यः विद्यः

As the Sutra Taught by Inexhaustible Understanding states,

A drop of water which falls into the great sea never disappears, even in the period of an eon of millions of years. Virtues which have been dedicated to enlightenment are just the same: they never disappear before the state of perfect enlightenment is achieved.

8
The Wish Burns Bad Deeds

।श्वेतायः विदः हुः श्रेः त्र च द्वार्थः दः याः विदः त्याः त्र दे दे द्वार्थः दः व्याः त्याः त्र दे दे दे दे व । त्यादः त्यः त्र हे द द द्वार्थः त्याः श्वेदः दे दे द्वार्थः द्वार्थः त्याः त्य

A person may have committed deeds
That are dreadful in the extreme, and yet
Anyone who relies on this can be freed
From all of them in an instant, as though they relied
On a warrior to save them from some horrible fear.
Why then would those who live with care
Not choose to rely upon this very wish?

|देश.वै.टेश.भवदु.भु.चख्रेथ.कुया.कुर.क्रा

It burns with certainty, in an instant, Even the greatest of bad deeds, as if it were The fire that comes at the end of time.

द्रः मुन्द्रायायात् मुन्द्रः मुन्द्रायायात् मुन्द्रः मुन्द्

This wish for enlightenment has a tremendous ability to destroy the effects of bad deeds. It is as though this wish were the fire that comes at the end of time, meaning at the end of the eon of destruction—the fire that destroys the entire physical world from the first meditation level on down. This is because the wish can burn, with certainty, and in a single instant, even the greatest of bad deeds: those deeds which would force one into a birth in the hells.

If the wish, by the way, has the power to destroy even those kinds of karma which are certain to produce an experience, then there is no need to say that

it has the ability to do so with those types of karma which are not certain to produce an experience. Those of the Greater Vehicle can utilize an act of purification, in which all four of the forces of purification are present, in order to purify themselves of the expected ripening of those types of karma which are certain to produce an experience. The expression "certain to produce an experience" then refers to those kinds of karma which are proven, through many cases of scriptural authority and also through reasoning, to be certain to produce an experience *unless one practices the appropriate antidote* to their power.

Make Exquisite Offerings to Attain the Wish

Make offerings, in an excellent way, to Those Who have Gone That Way; to the holy Jewel Of the Dharma, the absence of impurity; and to Those oceans of high spiritual qualities: To the sons and daughters of the Buddhas, In order to acquire this jewel wish.

बिर्मित्वायम्य स्टिस्टिन्स्य स्टिन्स्य स्टिन्

| व्याक्षःक्ष्यःक्षःक्ष्यः विदःष्ठम्यः द्वाः विदःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमःष्ठःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमः विदःष्यःष्ठःष्ठःष्ठमःष्ठःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमः विदःष्ठमः

Give flowers, and fruits, as many as exist;
And all the different herbs, as many as there may be.
Give each and every precious substance contained in the planet,
All the pure and lovely water that exists.
Give the precious mountains, and so too
The forests, quiet places of refuge, and lovely spots;
Give the plants, studded with flowers, and adorned,
The trees whose branches are bent low under fine ripe fruit.
Give fragrances and incenses, even those which are found
In the worlds of pleasure beings and the like;
The wishing tree, and the tree of precious substances.
Give grain that grows without ever being planted,
And any other lovely object which is worthy of presenting—
Lovely lakes and bathing ponds bedecked with lotus blossoms
And water birds of beauty, singing their splendid songs.

।लूटशःश्वीचीटःचःसुटःतःटुःट्योःगीय। ।सूरशःशीचतःरचःउत्तिष्याःचिष्यत्रःग्रीःशवदाःचिष्यत्रःय। |स्राध्यायाय्यं प्रम्याय्यं प्रम्यायायाः स्रिक्षायाः स्रिक्षायः स्

I imagine in my mind each and every one
Of those objects owned by no one
Which may exist in all the infinite expanse
Of all of myriad space. I offer these
In an excellent way, to the highest
Of all living beings, to the Able Ones,
Along with their sons and daughters.
May all of these beings of highest spiritual qualities,
Who possess the ultimate form of compassion,
Look upon me with love, and accept all I offer.

| प्रम्यान्ते प्रस्ति स्वर्थं स्वर्थं स्वर्थं स्वर्थं स्वर्थं स्वर्थं स्वरं स

I am not the kind of person who has merit,
I am extremely poor, and I have no other kind
Of wealth that I might offer. I beg you therefore,
Protector who thinks of what might be
Of benefit to others, to use your power
To accept these offerings, all for my own sake.

<u>|मुत्य:८८:८,शंबाक्षश्वातात्र्याःयोशःयी</u>

|चीक्र.तक्र.चिट्.ची.उत्तरक्र.की.अक्ट.चर.चची| |श्रुश्रक्र.टेतव्र.अक्ट्या.क्रश्र.चट्या.ब्रे.ल्ल्ट्य.चढ्रेश.व्या |चर्या.च्रा.जीक्र.गीक्र.योथ्य.टे.टेचैक्त.चर.चची|

I offer my own body forever to the Victors, And to their sons and daughters; and I beg These supreme warriors to accept me, totally, For in reverence I offer myself as your subject.

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्।

प्रमुद्ध्याः

प्रमुद्धयः

प्रमुद्ध्याः

प्रमुद्धः

प्र

Here next is the giving of your own body. The next section of the text is meant to say, "But I do have a body that I could offer you, and so I do." I do have the rights to my own body, and I hereby give up, forever and in every way, any concept of it belonging to myself. I offer it instead to the Victors, and to their sons and daughters. I beg these supreme warriors to accept me, my body, totally. I am impelled by my faith and reverence for you to offer myself as your subject, and I will do whatever you command me to do.

|सुक्षःग्री:विदःयःविदःतुःदेःबिष्यःय।
|विव्यःग्री:ब्राच्यवःवविःवाश्रवःबिदःवर्धरःवःश्वर।
|देवःकेदःववरःववेःगःवःधेदःवेदःव्यर।
|सुक्रिंगःवेदःकवशःसःवेदःवेदःविष्यःय।

I make this offering in a great bathing chamber, Filled with fine fragrance, and with a floor Made of crystal, perfectly clear, sparkling, gleaming. The chamber has lovely pillars, Glowing with precious jewels, And a canopy stretched across it, With pearls, and radiating light.

र्त्रियःश्र्रात्त्रकायः दुःस्रकाः भुः विकायार्श्वा । मेन केन त्रुमायाः सरार्थः भूकाः गुः कु। । मेन केन त्रुमायाः सरार्थः भूकाः गुः कु। । मेन केन त्रुमायाः सरार्थः भूकाः गुः कु।

Make this offering of bathing to the holy bodies Of Those Who Have Gone That Way, and to Their sons and daughters. Use many great And precious vases, filled with water Which is scented, and lovely; make the offering With a great number of songs, and music.

|ने'न्याःभु'त्यःसर्ह्यस्यःयःस्रेन्'यदेःर्वोक्।

Wipe the holy bodies of these ones Using immaculate towels, beyond all compare, Imbued with the sweetest of scents.

|दे.४४.८.जाय.र्य्यात्मयम्बर्धेर.यद्या |४.यचत.त्रे४.२.ट्र.७४.२४.त.यय्वा |य्र्याच्यात्मयःत्र्यात्म्यात्म्या

Next offer them the highest of all clothing, Stained the excellent color, and wafting With the finest fragrance. Offer them a whole Variety of rich raiments, sheer and soft. विष्याक्ष्यान्तुःस्यादेः ८८ देः ८वा वीषा विषयाक्षः यः गुक्दः प्व=८ ८८ विष्यः ८वि८ कः ८८ । विषयाक्षः यः गुक्दः प्वचा क्ष्याक्ष्यः विषयाक्षः यः विष्याः

Offer too hundreds of highest ornaments, Of every different sort, to those realized beings Such as Excellent One, and the Undefeatable, To Gentle Voice, and the Lord of All the World.

विद्-कवाश्वर्यन्तर्यः विद्-त्वाश्वर्याः विद्-त्वाश्वर्यः विद्-त्वाश्वर्यः विद्-त्वाश्वर्यः विद्-त्वाश्वर्यः विद्-त्वर्यः विद-त्वर्यः विद्-त्वर्यः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्-त्वयः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः विद्ययः व

Now take the highest of all fragrant ointments, With scents that pervade the thousand groups Of a thousand collections of a thousand planets each, And use them to anoint the holy bodies of every one Of the Lords of the Able Ones, those who are like Pure refined gold, shined to a perfect polish.

वितः निवतः अर्केनः वाद्यशः अर्केवाः यः प्येनः वेदः निवे। । श्रेनेवाः अदः नः नः नितः यन् अः नितः। । श्रुनः प्रयाः यः र्यवायः नैः विश्वः वश्ययः उनः नितः। । वितः वः श्रेयः योग्यायः प्येनः वेदः स्थयः ग्रीकः अर्केन।

Make offerings to the highest object of all offerings, To the Lords of the Able Ones; offer every Different kind of flower, like the mandara, The red lotus, and the blue lotus, Arranged as well in lovely garlands.

|र्स्स्यायदे:र्स्स्याय्यायः । स्थ्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः याद्यायः

Offer them too supreme incense powders, exquisite, Great clouds of incense that send forth all their scent.

।ঐ.শব্ধ.४४४।ऒट.टे.ज.२थज.च२.पश्ची। ।ॳज.च४.चचर.चर्टर.कॅ.क्र्यांश.च२४.तश्ची।

Also offer the repast of the gods, fine foods, And every sort of refreshment.

বিষ্ঠান ক্রীর মার্ক্তর প্রত্যান্তর বির্বাহ্য বির্বাহ্য

Offer in addition lamps made of precious jewels, On lotuses of gold, lined in array.

विष्याक्षः हुद्वः स्टः चर्ल्वेषः स्वषः त्याः न्ययाः विष्यः विष्यः स्वरः चर्ल्वेषः स्वरः चर्ल्वेषः स्वरः चर्ल्वेषः स्वरः चर्लेषः स्वरः स्व

Offer, to those whose nature is compassion, The earth, set forth in a lovely way, Smeared with incense powder, and strewn With lovely blooms of loose flowers; And upon it great mansions, palaces, And within them those singing out lovely Songs of praise. The mansions are decked out

In jewels, pearls and precious gems, Adorning the sky itself, and blazing.

Constantly offer to the Lords of the Able Ones Lovely parasols made of precious substances; They have golden handles, and around the edge They are covered with lovely adornments that look Like jewelry. Stand them thus, With their excellent outlines, exquisite to the eye.

Think then of a whole mass of offerings Beyond those you have already offered: Lovely music and song, and think, "May each one of them be there, In a separate cloud, to satisfy The pain of every living being."

|८४१केंश्रदर्गित्रः सकेंग्राः श्रस्य राज्य र |सकेंद्र:हेत्र: इस्र राद्यः सुरग्राः वाल्याः या |देत्र: केंद्र: सेंग्रां या संग्रां स्वरां

विष्यः से विष्य

And think, "May a great rain fall, In a never-ending stream, precious gems, And flowers, and other such offerings, Upon each and every expression Of the Jewel of the Holy Dharma, Upon shrines of offering, And upon the holy bodies."

10 The Four Forces of Purification

द्रम्मात्मात्वत् क्रिंत्राची क्रिंत्रची क्रिंत्रच

The fourth section here concerns purifying yourself of bad deeds, through using all four of the forces together. We begin with a general presentation. You should from the very beginning make efforts to see that you are not sullied by performing any harmful actions. Despite your efforts, however, such an action may occur, due to some instance of carelessness, an attack of mental afflictions, or the like. It would be a mistake in such a case to simply ignore the bad deed; you should rather exert yourself in the various methods of repairing the damage. These methods were taught by our compassionate Teacher.

Instances in which you have committed some transgression of your vows, at whichever level of vows you may have, should be repaired according to the methods prescribed for those particular vows. For repairing the damage caused by other kinds of bad deeds you should utilize the four powers. As the *Sutra on the Four Practices* states,

If, oh Loving One, some great bodhisattva has succeeded in the four practices, then even those bad deeds which have been both committed and collected can be overcome. What are the four practices? They are as follows: the activity of destruction; the activity of applying the antidote; the force of restraining from the particular bad deed; and the force of the foundation.

The expression "committed and collected" refers to actions whose karmic results are "certain to be experienced." If even these types of karmic results can be overcome by the four practices, then there is no need to mention those which are not certain to be experienced.

ઽૺ૾ઌઃકૣ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼઌ૱૾૽ઽઽ૽ઌ૱૽૿ૢ૽ૺ૱ૡ૽૱ૡ૱ઌ૽૽૱ૡ૱ૡ૽૽ૢૼૺૼૼૼૼૼઌ૾૽ઌ૽ઌ૽૽ૡ૱ઌ૽૽૱ૡૺ૾ૹૢ૽ૺઌ ઌ૽૽ૹ૾ૺ૾૾ઽઌ૽ૺ૾ઌૡૺ૾ઌ૱૽૿ૢ૽ૺ૱ૡ૽૽૱ૡ૽ઌ૱ઌ૽૽૱ઌ૱૽૽ૢૼૺૼૢઌ૽ઌ૽ઌ૽૽૱ઌ૱ઌ૽ૺ૱ઌ૽ૺ૱ૹ૽ૺ

The first of these four forces involves feeling strong regret over having committed some negative action. In order to achieve this level of regret, you must contemplate carefully the way in which negative actions trigger three different karmic results.

The second force, as described in the *Compendium of Trainings*, consists of performing practices such as studying the profound scriptures of the canon, meditating on emptiness, reciting secret words, preparing physical representations of the holy bodies of enlightened beings, making offerings, and reciting the names of high beings.

દિ.શ્.મ.વેશ્વાન.ધેશ્વાન.ધેશ્વ-૧૨.૧ વર્ષે ત્યાન ક્ષેયાન ક્યાન ક્ષેયાન ક્ષેય

The third force is to restrain yourself perfectly from ever committing these negative actions again in the future. The fourth consists of meditating upon the wish for enlightenment, and similar practices. Here it is the first force which is described in great detail. The points to be considered are the time at which the bad deeds may have been committed, the cause, the mode of expression, the undertaking of the deed, its object, and how the deed was committed.

Don't Wait to Destroy the Bad Karma You've Done Before

This Lord of Death cannot be trusted, He waits for no one, finished or not. He takes all sorts suddenly, those sick and well, So feel not certain about your life.

चित्रं चार्यभाषाय्याच्याद्याद्यभाष्ट्रं केत्रः विद्यम् विद्य

"What kind of protection," one may ask, "is it that we need, so quickly, while we have yet to die, and have still not purified ourselves of our bad deeds?" This Lord of Death cannot be trusted, even for a single moment of time, and he waits for no one: he has absolutely no interest in whether you have finished purifying yourself of your negative actions or not. His coming in no way depends upon whether what you have hoped to do is done or not. All sorts of people die suddenly, before their life has reached its normal length, and whether they have gone through some sickness or whether they are well. Therefore you should feel no certainty about your life, no assurance even that you will not die this very day. And since this fact that you can feel no certainty is true, you should quickly purify yourself of your negative actions.

12
About Bad Karma You've Done for Others

I'll have to give up it all and travel, But I've failed to realize this fact, And so I've committed an entire variety Of bad deeds for friends and enemies.

| न्या विद्यालय । क्षेत्र । विद्यालय । विद्य

The enemies cease to exist, The friends too cease to exist, I myself cease to exist as well; And everything else ceases too.

त्र्रीत्यायीः र्नेत्रः नुस्यायाः नुस्यायः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स

And it was wrong to commit bad deeds for these reasons, because shortly afterwards the enemies cease to exist, and the friends to cease to exist, and I myself cease to exist as well. Just so everything else, the relatives and the possessions and so on, ceases too. Nothing is in the least bit dependable, and so I should also feel regret at having committed negative actions due to any attachment or dislike for any of them.

|क्षे:प्रश्नाक्ष्रश्नाःशुर्द्धः त्वः प्रविक्षः |द्रोदेशः व्याप्तः प्रदः व्यादः श्चिदः या |दे:दे:द्रवः यवे:प्युव्यः दुः व्याद्धः या

বিব্যান্যরপর্যার্থ সমূদ্রে প্রতিম

All the objects you use are the same As something experienced during a dream. They are soon nothing but some memory; All things that have passed are no longer here.

त्त्रश्रभावित वित्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र वित्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र वित्र वित्र क्षेत्र वित्र वित

Think of some minor pleasure that you might *experience during a dream*. When you wake up, the pleasure is no longer anything but a memory. *All the objects* that you might deceive yourself into thinking are pleasant in this life, and which *you use, are the same*. When you die *they are soon nothing but some memory*. Therefore you should resolve, from this moment on, and time and time again, that you will only practice the Dharma. *All* those *things* that *have passed are no longer here*, and so they become nothing more than a memory.

|२.७१वा,यार्श्व,क्र.व.१.८८८८। |अह्त,रट.श्र.शह्त,र्यात्रका |२.८या.१५८८८९ |श्र.प्रच.यार्थ,श्रया |श्र.प्रच.यार.ल.४४.४८४५४

Even here in the present moment, In the time that we have lived, Many friends and enemies have slipped to the past. But all the negative that we committed For their sakes lies before us still.

Even here in the present moment, in the time that we have lived, we have seen many who were our friends, and many who were our enemies, slip into the past. But whatever dreadful consequences there may be from all the negative that we committed for their sakes still lies before us. It's like the lines that say,

Since they can never take upon themselves Any share of the suffering, What use then are the best of friends, Who only serve to hinder us?

Thus we must feel, over and over again, deep regret at having committed bad deeds for their sakes.

|देन्यः प्रचानिक्षः व्याप्तः विक्षः ।दिन्यः विक्षः । यद्याः यो काः क्ष्यः प्रदेशः विक्षः । यद्याः यो काः व्याकः द्याः विक्षः । यद्याः यो काः विक्षः यद्याः विक्षः । व्याप्तः विक्षः । विकषः । विक्षः । व

As I live in this condition, suddenly, Without my even realizing it, I commit a great number of different bad deeds, Due to my ignorance, to liking and disliking.

बुर्शायन्याः योशः हेयाश्वायम् अध्यायक्षः देशायाः श्रेषाः नदः वर्ते नः क्याशः नदः बुः सूदः । । प्रबुः यः देशः विश्वायः विश्वयः वर्षः वर्ष ताय-देश्य-तम्भूष्य-त्र-विद्। यभ-देश्य-तम्भूष्य-त्र-विद्। यभ-कृष्य-तम्भूष्य-त्र-विद्। यभ-कृष्य-तम्भूष्य-तम्-विद्। यभ-कृष्य-तम्-विद्। यभ-कृष्य-तम्-विद्। यभ-कृष्य-तम्-विद्।

In just a single instant of time as I live in this condition, of having no certainty when it is that I will die—that is to say, suddenly, without my even realizing it, I commit a great number of different bad deeds, due to my ignorance, my tendency of liking some things, and disliking other things. These now will take me to a birth in the lower realms. I must contemplate thus the facts of how my death is certain, and how the time that I will die is not certain at all, and how when I die there is nothing at all that can help me except the Dharma. I must think carefully too of all the problems of these lower realms. I must feel, and feel again and again, deep regret then at having committed these negative deeds.

Don't Think You Can't Die Now with Your Bad Karma

वित्रः सर्वतः स्ट्रिंदः यः स्ट्रिंदः स्वेदः यद्याः वित्रः वित्रः

Day and night, without hesitating This life is forever dropping, There is no extra life set aside That is ever going to come to you. How then could it ever happen That someone like me wouldn't die?

|याक्षेत्र,यावेत्रा,यीत्र,यीत्रा,याव्य,यास्त्रीत्र,यीटः। |यर्या,यु,त्राता,य,यर्येया,यब्रेष्ट्री |यक्षित्रः श्रीक्षः श्वः स्वतः स्वते क्षः श्वः स्वतः ।
|यक्षित्रः हेत्वः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः ।
|यक्षित्रः हेत्वः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः ।
|यक्षितः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः ।
|यक्षितः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः ।

You may be lying down on your bed
Surrounded by your friends and family,
But it's only you, and you alone,
Who will have to undergo the pain.
When Lord Death's messengers take hold of you.
What's the use of your family,
And what use are your friends?

१२.क्र.चर्यर्याय्येयः यश्चित्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्

At that moment protection is good deeds alone, Though I failed to follow them during my life.

|अर्वे[क:र्य:प्यम:अद:प्यद्या:वीक:कै। |प्रह्मेया:य:प्यदे:प्यद:अ:प्रक्रंप:क्रा |अ:ह्मा:कें:प्यदेवे:केद:द्या:ह्। |श्रेम:य:अद:र्य:हे:प्यर:पश्च्या

Oh Protectors, I've been careless, and wasn't aware I'd be faced with terrors like this; And so I accomplished many negative deeds, All for the sake of this fleeting life.

।ते.प्रटाम्निर.तव्यः चत्र्यः स्टा ।ते.प्रटाम्निर.तव्यः चत्र्यः स्टा There are people who are about
To have one of their limbs cut off;
And on the day they're dragged away
To the place, they are seized with terror.
Their whole appearance from before is transformed:
Their mouths go dry, eyes bulge, and the rest.

Suppose then that you are taken hold of
By the messengers of the Lord of Death,
By those monstrous and terrifying creatures,
And are stricken by that great fear, the unique pain.
If one can go through the change before
Then what need then is there ever to speak
Of this most desperate of all situations?

। शुः लिया प्रहेया श्राक्ष या प्रश्नी या प्

|नादबःदेरःश्चित्रवःस्टिःक्षरःग्री |देःक्टें:चन्याःग्रीबःहेःक्षरःग्री

Where is there now anyone who can
Save me completely from this horror?
Your face takes on a look of terror,
Your eyes open wide with panic,
And you turn in every direction
To look for someone who can help.
You realize that there is no one to protect you,
No one in any direction at all,
And the darkness then comes and envelops you.
In this place, there is no one at all who can protect you;
At that moment nothing you can do for yourself.

|दे.चर्याक्कीयायायम्याच्याः अमूर्याः अमूर्याः अमूर्याः अभूर्याः अभूर्यः अभूर्याः अभूर्यः अभूर्याः अभूर्यः अभूर्य

The Victorious Buddhas, the Saviors of all living kind, Exert themselves in order to protect beings. Thus it is that you should take refuge today itself, In those of great power, who remove every kind of fear.

१२.त्रुयःश्रम्भःश्रीयशःश्रीःश्रम्भ। १२८.क्ष्यःश्रमःश्रमःश्रमःश्रमःश्रमः। १८८.क्ष्यःश्रमः। १८८.क्ष्यःश्रमः। १८८.क्ष्यःश्रमः।

You should as well take total refuge In the Dharma which they have grasped completely, The Dharma which eliminates this cycle's every fear, As well as in the assembly of bodhisattvas.

বিশ্ব প্রত্যা বিশ্ব ব

Even in a case where you're endangered By some normal illness, you must still Follow the advice of a physician. There's no need to mention then What you should do in the clutches Of the disease of a thousand evils, Of liking things and the rest.

निःमार्डमामीर्याम्याद्रः यहं स्राञ्चीदः या निः द्याः यार्शेः यद्रेः श्रुवः यालवः द्या निः द्याः यार्शेः यदेः श्रुवः यालवः द्या निः द्याः यार्शेः यदेः श्रुवः यालवः द्या

Even a single instance of these is enough To waste all the human beings in our world, And you will never find anywhere at all Another medicine that can treat them.

। ব্রিলা-ই : রমধা-তর্ব-বেল্রীর-মা-দ্রৌ। । বি-মো-শ্লীর-মা-রমধা-তর্ব-মান্রীর।

वित्रः तुः यित्रः श्रेयाः श्चरः यवः यात्रश् । वित्रः तुः यात्रेः श्चयाः श्चरः यवः यात्रश्

The Omniscient One is a physician for this; He's given instructions for uprooting all pains, Though we fail to follow and concentrate. It's incredibly ignorant, disgraceful.

| प्युक्-सेट-वायट-सर-क्केंक-के-द्रवीका | प्राया-स्ट्र-केंट-दु-स्ट्र-प्र-सी | प्राया-स्ट्र-केंट-दु-स्ट्र-प्र-सी | प्राया-स्ट्र-केंट-प्र-सी

A person must be very cautious Even of small, ordinary cliffs; There is no need to say then That we must take care around Those many thousands of miles high, And where a fall means a very long time.

|दे.द्व.व्यं.व.क्य.वक्ष.व्यं |यदे.यर.वर्या.त.द्वीय.य.क्य.व्यं |यद्या.वे.क्येट्रयर.व्युट्य.वव्य.द्वा |दे.वे.व्यंद्व.क्य.व्यंत्र्या

It is not right to relax and think,
"I will never die right now, today;"
For without a doubt the time will come
When you have disappeared.

स्र-र्

It is just as the *Epistle of Kanika* states:

It's no good thing for a human being Ever to say, "I'll do it tomorrow;" The tomorrow when you are no longer here Is a day that beyond any doubt will come.

| प्रत्याः व्याः व्याः

Who was it that granted you the power not to fear? How could you ever gain any certain freedom That you would, beyond doubt, not disappear? Why is it you sit there relaxed?

।श्वंत्रःकरःश्वंदःश्वेःश्वेताःयःयशा ।यद्याःयःश्वंयाःयःश्वःश्वंदःद्या ।यद्याःयःश्वंयाःयःश्वेतःद्याः ।श्वंत्रःकरःश्वंदःश्वेतःयथा

All which you have enjoyed Up to this point has fallen apart; And what further do you have? All because of your craving for these, You've acted against your Lama's wishes. |यार्श्वःकें त्वरे दिर्दे दिर्दे प्रविवः दे। |याक्षेत्रः दिरः यात्रेश्वः याः इसः श्चर्द्यः वश्वा |याक्षेत्रः याः योद्दे प्रवर्षे दिर्वोश्वः व। |यार्ष्ठेत्राः याः योद्दे प्रवर्षे प्रवर्षे श्वा |यार्ष्ठेत्राः याः योद्दे प्रवर्षे श्वा

You will give up this, that was While you lived, and just so With friends and relatives; Then go on alone to who knows where. Of what use then are any of Your friends or enemies?

14 On Putting Your Hopes in Friends and Family

र्षेत्रभायाकी यन्त्रामी त्याक्ष्याक्ष्य स्थान स्यान स्थान स्यान स्थान स

Here is the second point. You are going to have to give up everything: this body that you have here, while you are alive, and just so your friends and relatives as well. And then you will have to go on alone, to "who knows where;" that is, to a place which you cannot now know for sure. And so what is the use of any of your friends or enemies? They can be of no help at all, and thus it is wrong for you to feel any attachment for them.

15 The Actual Purification

|अर्मेदःरंदिःश्चुदःश्चरःसर्ददःशुमःतु। |धतःश्चरःश्चृताःतश्चतःदहितासःस्रेमशःग्रीस। |धरःतरःधरःतुःधृताःदर्वतःह। |देःत्वाःश्चमसःस्त्राः

You stand here in the Protector's direct presence, Joining your palms at your breast, And with a sense of fear for suffering Prostrate, over and over again, And thus undertake to purify Yourself of all these.

वित्तेत्र स्वास्त्र स्वास

The bad deeds I have committed, my Guides, I ask you to consider mistakes.
They are nothing good, and from this moment on, I'll never commit any single one.

विश्वासान्ते, प्रात्मिश्वासान्त्र स्थित् मान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थित् । योश्वासान्य स्थान्य स्थान

Next is the pledge to restrain ourselves. For this reason I make the following request to the *Guides: "The bad deeds I have committed* are mistakes, and *I ask you to consider them mistakes.* The bad things I have done *are nothing good, and from this moment on,* even at the cost of my life, *I will never commit any single one* of them at all, ever again." By doing so we stop the flow of our bad deeds, and restrain ourselves from them again.

The teachings of the Buddha, and the commentaries upon them, present a great number of ways in which we can clean ourselves of our bad deeds. The one antidote which is totally complete though is this purification, this practice of using all four forces together to do the purifying. It is stated in a number of scriptures—for example, in the *Blaze of Reasoning* and in the *Great Commentary to the Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Verses*—that this practice can erase even those bad deeds which are definite to lead to the experience of a karmic result.

श्रम्भाश्ची, यदु, योयोशः श्चिर्त्तयः या. रश्चायाश्चिरः । विर्त्तयः रीद्र्यः स्वायः युष्तः यविष्यः य

People like you and I have no great knowledge of the various laws of actions and their consequences. Even that very little bit which we do understand we are unable to put into practice as we should. Every single day then we commit negative actions in a great variety of different ways. Because of this we must follow the path of purifying ourselves of our bad deeds on a continual basis. And we should make efforts in the practice especially with the intention of purifying ourselves of those thoughts and actions which block us from being able to develop the true wish for enlightenment.

16 How to Rejoice

|र्याय:प्रश्नाह्म शुःधी:प्रदःश्टा |श्रुवा:पश्र्व:प्रवा:पर्देर:वाद्माःया |श्रुवा:पश्र्व:प्रवा:पर्देर:वाद्माःया |श्रुव:पश्र्व:शुःधी:प्रदःश्टा

I rejoice, with joy, in the virtuous deeds Which relieve the torment of the lower realms For every being; and in the fact That these suffering beings could ever come To live in happiness.

|द्रश्र.तर.बर.ज.लु.४८.ट्र.| |जेश.२४.उप्ट्र्य.चयु.र्झेच|.चर्झेज.जश| |ट्रे.ज.ह्रश्र.श्रे.लु.४८.ट्र.| |चिर.क्य.चै.र.ची.र.च्या.चश्रच|

I rejoice in their having collected together Good deeds which act as enlightenment's cause. I rejoice in living beings' certain freedom From the sufferings of cyclic life.

|श्चेययाद्म्ययात्री:चिट्यक्याद्दः। |श्चेयायाद्मेयायायदःत्याःस्ट्रा |श्चेयायाद्मेयायायदःत्याःस्ट्रा |श्चेयायाद्मेयायाय्दःत्यादेःस्ट्रा |श्चेयायाद्मेयायाद्मेयायाःस्ट्रायाया

|द्याव:प्रशाहेश:शु:धी:रद:दें।

So too I rejoice in the enlightenment
Of those who protect, and in the levels
Of the sons and daughters.
I rejoice with gladness in the ocean
Of the goodness of the wish for enlightenment
Which brings every living being to happiness;
I rejoice too in what they undertake
To help all living kind.

17 Requesting the Teaching of Enlightened Beings

क्रिंग्यः इस्यः शुरुः त्यक्रिया वित्यः स्रेत्रः हो या स्रेत्रः स्रेत्रः त्यक्रियः त्या वित्यः स्रेत्रः हो या स्रेत्रः स्रेत्रः स्रेत्रः त्या वित्यः स्रित्रः स्रित्रः स्रित्रः स्रित्रः त्या

I join my palms at my breast and make Supplication to all the Buddhas in every Corner of the universe. I request them to light the lamp of the Dharma In order to illuminate every one Of the living beings who wander confused In suffering and darkness.

18 Asking Enlightened Beings to Stay

विष्यः वाश्चः त्यः व्यवः विष्यः व्याः विष्यः श्चें स्थ्यः विष्यः वाश्चें व्याः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विषय

|पश्चेतायाचारमास्त्रीत्राचित्रामायाच्या

I join my palms at my breast and make Supplication to those Victorious Ones Who've determined to pass into "nirvana." I beg them not to leave behind All these living beings so blind, And to remain for countless eons.

19 How to Dedicate Good Deeds

। বি: শ্বেম: বেরী: ব্যা: শূর্ম: ব্রহ্ম: দ্রী।
। ব্রা: বা: বা: ব্রহ্ম: বর্ম বা: ব্রহ্ম: বর্ম বা: বর্ম বর্ম বা: বর্ম বা:

Through performing all these activities, Great goodness have I gathered. I pray that, by this virtue, The pain of every single living Creature may be removed.

१८र्चे.च.४८.स.ह.श्री८.दी १४८.श्रूथ.ची.च.८.देश १श्रूथ.८८.श्रूथ.त.के८.८च.८८.१ १८.क.४८.चील्या.ची.

I pray as well that I may become The medicine, and the physician, As well as nurses for all who are sick, Until the day they are cured.

I pray that a shower of food and drink May fall and that, when the intermediate eon Of famine arrives, I may become Food and drink as well.

। श्रेश्रश्चर सेंद्र श्रेष्ट्र श्र

I pray that I may become myself
A great treasure house,
One that can never be exhausted,
For all living beings who are poor, and lack.
May I become too anything they need
Or want, an entire range
Of the different necessities for life,
And so appear to their very eyes.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading Ten: The Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Second of Six Parts

The following selections are taken from the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* (*Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD). The commentary to a number of the selections comes from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, an explanation of Master Shantideva's work by the premier disciple of Je Tsongkapa, Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432).

The Verses for Taking the Vows of a Bodhisattva

With this moment my life has become fruitful; I have truly achieved a human life Today I have been born into the family of the Buddhas; Now I have become a child of the Buddhas.

तत्। द्रिन्द्र-अटकाक्चिकाग्री-इयोकाक्षुकानान्त्र-क्रियाक्षेत्रकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्य-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाधिकान्य-स्वाधिकान्त्र-स्वाध

चीर. हे. श्रेश. टी. ट्याट. टा झूंश. तत्। विराध क्षेश. टी. ट्याट. टा झूंश. पत्। विराध क्षेश. टी. ट्याट. टा झूंश. पत्।

How is it that we uplift our hearts? With this moment—that is, at the point where I develop the wish and take the vows—my life has become fruitful; now I have truly achieved a human life, in the sense that I have given meaning to the spiritual leisure and fortune with which I was born. Today I have been born into the family of the Buddhas: I have become a bodhisattva. Practice the feeling of gladness, thinking to yourself, "Now I have become a child of the Buddhas"—for this is the prayer wherein one thinks to oneself, "When is it that I will become a child of the Buddhas?"

|र्ह्म्यायम्यायायायः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स

Now, no matter what, I will undertake Only those actions which are fitting For those who belong to the family, And I will assure that this holy And faultless family is never defiled.

Here is the second point. You may wonder whether this act alone is enough. It is not, for you must then make the resolution: "Now, no matter what, I will undertake only those actions of the three doors which are fitting for those who belong to the family of my new fathers, the Buddhas. I will keep my family one which

is *holy*, one which is at all times—in the beginning, and during, and at the end of any action—forever made beautiful: *faultless*, and filled only with wonderful qualities. *I will* make every effort I can to *assure that* my mind *is never defiled* by breaking my vows—the rules that have been set forth for those that are following the wish both in the form of a prayer, and in the form of action.

2
Take Joy in the Vows

विद्यक्ष्यान्त्रःस्ट्यं व्याप्याः विद्यक्षयाः द्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः व्या विद्यक्षयः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः विद्यक्षयः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः स्ट्रम्यः

Suppose a beggar were to find Some precious jewel in a pile of garbage. I am just the same, for by dumb luck I have been able to develop The wish for enlightenment.

श्रमश्चर्याक्षेत्रः त्रियाः विद्याः विद्याः त्रियः विद्याः त्रियः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्य भ्रमश्चरः विद्याः विद

Here is the third point. Suppose a poor and penniless beggar were to find some precious jewel in a pile of garbage. I am just the same, for by "dumb luck"—that is, through simple good fortune—I have been able to develop this precious wish for enlightenment. It is surely only something that has happened through the miraculous power of the Enlightened Ones.

3
The Wish Defeats Aging and Death

|वर्त्त्र्राचरिःवक्ते:वन्मावर्धेश्रश्चान्द्रिःयदे। |वर्तुन्द्वि:शक्तेमाःगुरःवन्देःधोदःवे।

The supreme nectar of deathlessness, Which acts to destroy the Lord of Death Within every living being, is as well this wish.

यायम्याये स्री र्यात्वार स्रीत्य स्थाये स्थ

Here is the first of the five. There is a *supreme nectar of deathlessness*, one *which acts to destroy the Lord of Death within every living being*—which stops this condition of having helplessly to die. And the nectar *is this wish* for enlightenment, because it leads us to the state where there is no aging, and no death.

|वर्त्त्राचित्र:नृतुत्य:च:श्रेत्य:च:श्रे| |श्रे:बन:महिन:स्पट:वन्ने:श्रेद:र्ह्य

This same wish is an endless Treasure house which removes The poverty of every living thing.

विर्मे निर्मे स्थान के निर्मेश के मिल्ली मिल्ली के किया है।

This same wish is a supreme medicine Which puts a final end To the illness of living kind.

।श्रेर्वायमायविष्यः विदःर्वायः यो।

विम् निर्देश्य का स्थान

The wish is a great tree which refreshes All those beings who have tired themselves Wandering along the road of cyclic existence.

।र्स्युत्यःचरःग्रीतःयदःश्चीःश्चेयाशःस्त्रेश् ।वर्स्यःचरःश्चरःयदःशुःश्चेयाशःस्त्रेश्

The wish is a great span That allows all living beings To escape from the lower realms.

विष्युं नदे क्रेंब स्ट्राम्य न्या न्या । विष्युं नदे क्रेंब स्ट्राम्य न्या न्या ।

The wish is a moon that rises In the mind, to clear away The mental afflictions That torment living creatures.

।दर्ते,यदुःशःचेशःस्यःस्यःस्यः ।दर्वेशःदर्वेशःश्रेःशःक्षरःस्यःस्य

The wish is a great sun That rises to obliterate, To rip out, the cataracts, The lack of knowledge, In every living being.

|มะเมื่าชิ้น เมื่อ The wish is the very essence

Of butter, distilled from churning The milk of the holy Dharma.

विक्तं प्रति सर्वे न्यं क्षेत्र प्रति व्यक्षः स्ति । विक्तं प्रति सर्वे न्यं क्षेत्र प्रति । विक्तं प्रति सर्वे न्यं क्षेत्र प्रति । विक्तं प्रति सर्वे न्यं क्षेत्र प्रति । विक्रं प्रति सर्वे न्यं क्षेत्र प्रति । विक्रं प्रति । वि

Sentient beings are travelers
Wandering here and there
Along the roads of the three realms,
Hoping to win pleasant experiences.
This wish remains the highest method
Of all for happiness: it brings
Satisfaction to all these travelers,
Every living being.

4
Offer Yourself as the Servant of Every Living Being

वित्रवाक्षेत्रः देश्याः स्त्रीत्वाः व्यव्यक्षः स्त्रीत्वाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रव वित्रः तुः विदेश्यः स्वर्षेत्रः तुः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वित्रवाः वि

I stand today in the presence Of all the Protectors. I invite every living creature As my guest, to partake In the very state of Those Who have Gone to Bliss, and in Happiness until they reach it. I call on every pleasure being, On near pleasure beings, and All such creatures, to take joy In this as well.

5 The Great Enemy

वि:रूट:श्रेट:श्रेवाश:ट्या:इश्रशःशी ।म्रट:यया:य:श्रेवाश:यर्द:श्रेव:या ।ट्यव:श्रह्टश:श्रेव:यर:हे:विया:सूर। ।टे:ट्या:वीश:यट्या:युव:यविव:युश्

The great enemies of anger, desire and the rest Are not creatures with hands, legs, or the like. Neither are they great warriors, or wily masters. So how did it happen, that they Have made me like their slave?

| याद्याः की द्रायां की द्रायां

They live in my mind, And hurt me at their absolute will, It's completely wrong that I should tolerate, And not feel anger for them: My patience with them is a disgrace.

|यायःहे:खु:८८:खु:श्रेष:इश्या |इश्रश्च:४८:यद्या:यःद्यारःयदशःग्रुटः। |शे:दया:यीशःग्रुटःश्वरःश्चेदःयदे। |शे:दर:धु:उट:यह्या:शे:बुश्च। ११४ - अर्ट अः श्रूं तथः उतः न्याः वर्देशः ते। । यादः न्दः स्वनः तः सेः स्वः ग्रादः। । यादः वः स्वनः तेः स्वः ग्रादः। । वेदः यन्याः स्तृन्यः विष्यः याः विष्यः विष्यः स्वाः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः स्वन्यः

Suppose the mighty pleasure beings, and
Near pleasure beings, all rose to be my enemy;
Still they would never be able to lead me to
The fires of No Respite, and throw me in.
But my great enemies, the powerful mental afflictions,
Can in a single instant throw me into fires so powerful
That if the great Mount Meru were to brush against them
Not even dust would remain.

|य्त्रवाचीःक्रॅंबःश्रंटबःद्याःविःवादः। |द्रुबःदेदःश्रंवाःब्रश्रदःश्रदः। |द्याःवालवःग्रुबःग्रदःदेःश्वःद्यदः। |य्युवःदेदःश्र्वाःवःबःध्यःव्यदः।

This great enemy of mine, the mental afflictions, Can live for a very long time: For time without beginning or end. But there is not a one of my other enemies, None of the worldly ones, who can live so long.

All look to help you and make you happy,
If you make an effort to relate to them
And serve them in a friendly way;
But if you try to relate to the mental afflictions,
They turn on you—hurt you, and bring you pain.

विष्ट्राचर वह्याश्रास्त्राच्या व्याप्तावस्या विष्ट्राचर व्याप्तावस्या विष्ट्राचर व्याप्ता विष्ट्राचर व्याप्ता विष्ट्राचर व्याप्ता विष्ट्राचर विष्ट्र विष्ट्र विष्ट्र विष्ट्राचर

They've been thus my constant enemy for a very long time; And are the one single cause that feeds and nourishes The entire mass of harmful things. How could I ever be free of all the terrors Of cyclic life, and feel gladness so long as They are rooted and fixed in my very heart?

वित्रं निर्वे न

They are guards for the prison of cyclic life, For the hells and all the like; They are butchers that kill you. How could it ever be possible That I could have happiness, So long as they are living In the net of desire that stays in my mind?

१२.५४.६.४४.१२५४.५४५.४५५४.४५१ १८४.तर.४.५१४५.४५८५४५५४५५१

१२. क्षेया यार्चे र स्त्रे र स्त्र र स्त्र या स

Even in temporary situations
Where someone does me some minor harm,
I feel anger, pride comes, and until I ruin them
I do not even stop to sleep.
Therefore I must exert myself,
Without letting up in my effort for even a moment,
Until such time as I have directly,
And finally, destroyed this enemy.

न्तिः स्त्रीत् स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वः

There are poor deluded ones who are willing to suffer For those who are going to die by their very nature; They advance to war with fanatical hopes of destroying: Completely ignoring the pain of being hit, Never to turn back, never to withdraw from the field, Until they have achieved their aim.

With the true enemy, an enemy who is an enemy by nature, Who is the cause of all of our sufferings, all the time, There is no need to say that I must be the same. Whatever comes, I must never become discouraged, I must never lessen in my resolve, Even if it brings me hundreds of sufferings.

चरः र्रमिश्रातः श्रेंशः दुः ट्य्य्शं श्र्रा चर्रात्रम्भात्तः श्रेंशः दुः ट्य्य्शं श्र्रा चर्रात्रम्भात्तः श्रेंशः दुः ट्य्य्शं श्रें चर्रात्रम्भात्तः श्रेंशः व्याप्त्रम्भात्तः श्रें दे स्वाप्त्रम्भात्तः विश्वाप्त्रम्भात्तः स्वाप्तः स

Here is the first. There are those "poor deluded ones," meaning people who are worthy of our pity, who are willing to suffer to kill those who are going to die by their very nature; that is, who will die by themselves anyway, without anyone having to kill them. These people "advance to war," meaning they go to fight in a war, with fanatical hopes of destroying their enemy. They are so intent on this goal that they completely ignore whatever suffering is inflicted upon themselves, the pain of being hit by some weapon like an arrow or spear. They have decided never to turn back, never to withdraw from the field, until they have achieved their aim of destroying their opponent. We on the other hand are faced with enemies that are the cause of all of our sufferings, all the time. They are the true enemy, a pure enemy: an enemy who is an enemy by nature, and who has always been so, from the moment we were born. There is no need to say that I must be the same as those other fighters: I must never become discouraged, never lessen in my resolve, never lose my warrior's heart, no matter what hardships I may have to face in the task of destroying this enemy. I must bear with whatever comes, even if it brings me hundreds of sufferings such as cold, hunger, thirst, or anything of the like. And it is right that I must never let up my efforts until I have been able to subdue the enemy of the mental afflictions.

6
Dealing with the Pain of Battle

निर्वात्मः स्वान्यस्यः स्वान्त्र्र्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त निर्वात्मः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्व निर्वात्मः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वानः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः स्वान्त

Like some ornament for their body
A person treasures even the mark of a wound
Meaninglessly put there by an enemy.
So why should we consider a problem
The pain we feel in our quest
To attain a very great purpose?

Here is the first. Consider how, in the everyday world, a person treasures, like some ornament for their body, even the mark of a wound that was put there by an enemy for some meaningless reason, over some insignificant thing, and then shows it off to other people, saying "This is how I got this one..." We, on the other hand, have undergone some kind of hardship, some kind of pain, for a very great purpose: that is, in our quest to attain total enlightenment. Why should we consider these pains then a problem? We should rather embrace them, for they can only help us.

|५:धःयार्द्रयःधःद्वीदःधःयःश्रेयाश्वःध। |५:धःयार्द्रयःधःद्वीदःधःयःश्रेयाश्वःध। |य्राट्याः व्याः श्रीयाः यात्रेत्।यात्

Even fishermen, butchers, farmers, and the like Endure willingly all kinds of harms
Such as cold or heat, thinking of nothing
More important than their livelihood.
Why then shouldn't someone like myself
For the sake of the living being's happiness?

वित्राक्षः तस्तुः क्ष्रः स्ट्वात्तः स्वर्थः व्यक्षः विक्षः व्यक्षः विक्षः व

You have pledged yourself to free all living beings
In the ten different directions from their mental afflictions.
At the same time you have failed to free you yourself
From your own mental afflictions,
Are you not some kind of madman then,
To say so while you've failed to judge your own level?

यन्याकृत्राय्त्रहेत् अद्दर्शास्त्रस्य स्वायात्य स्वायात्य स्वायात्य स्वायात्य स्वयात्य स्वयात्य स्वयात्य स्वया यात्रस्य स्वर्णा स्वयात्र स्वयात्र स्वयात्य स्वयाय स्वयाय

Here is the third point. Someone might make the following statement: "I admit that I am a person who has agreed to undertake the destruction of the mental afflictions within the minds of other persons. It would be wrong though for me to work to destroy the mental afflictions in my own mind, because if I succeeded in doing so I would have fallen into what is called the 'extreme of personal peace." You have though pledged yourself, and developed the wish, to free all living beings, beings as vast in extent as the ten different directions of space itself, from their mental afflictions. If at the same time you have failed to free you yourself from all your own mental afflictions, then you have failed even in the endeavor of accomplishing all your own needs, much less those of others. Are you not some kind of madman then, to say that you are going to free every other living being from their mental afflictions, while at the very same moment you have failed completely to judge your own level—the fact that you yourself are still at the mercy of your own mental afflictions? No one chained in the cycle of suffering of life themselves could ever accomplish all the goals of other living beings, and so you should rather make efforts to destroy the mental afflictions within your own mind.

7
Hating your Mental Afflictions

|दे.क्षेत्र.क्षेत्र.क्ष्ट्यायार्ष्क्ष्ययाय।
|ह्या.प्र.क्षेत्र.क्षेत्र.क्ष्यायक्ष्ययाय।
|ह्या.प्र.क्षेत्र.क्षेत्र.क्ष्यायत्र व्याविद्यायत्र विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्य विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्य विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्र विद्यायत्य विद्यायत्य

११९४-श्रेट्सप्ट्रिस्स चुर्स्स यार्हेग्स स्री

I should therefore never turn back
Even for a single moment from the task
Of destroying the mental afflictions.
I should get attached to them,
And learn to hate and make war.
These kinds of "mental afflictions"
Act to destroy the mental afflictions
And so are not counted among them.

याम्बिस्य प्राप्त विद्या विद्

Here is the first of the two. *The mental afflictions* are, *therefore*, things which deserve to be eliminated. As such, *I should never turn back*, either in my thoughts or my actions, *from the task of destroying them, even for a single moment*. *I should get attached to these* antidotes for the mental afflictions; that is, I should make use of the antidotes. *And I should learn to hate* the mental afflictions, *and make war* on them, and smash them.

यत्रयान्नेन्नरान् अर्पान् अर्पानेन्न विश्व विश्

Someone may ask the following question: "You seem to be describing some kind of bias in the attitude we should have towards the antidotes that eliminate our mental afflictions, and you have spoken about hating the thing that the antidote is supposed to eliminate. Aren't these types of thoughts themselves just another kind of mental affliction—that is, the very thing which

we are trying to eliminate?" *These kinds of* attitudes—of being attached to the antidotes for mental affliction, and of hating the mental afflictions we are trying to eliminate—are themselves only apparent *mental afflictions*. Because they are included into the antidote side—that is, because they are part of what acts to destroy the mental afflictions—they are not counted among the objects which we seek to eliminate from our minds. There are commentaries which do state that these are themselves something to be destroyed later, but what they mean by saying this is that, once one has finished off all the objects to be eliminated, one need no longer make war.

8
The Power of Resolve

| प्रचात्वात्वे प्रस्थेयास्यः हे प्रस्य प्रचात्वा । प्रचात्वात्वा स्थाप्य प्रचात्वा । प्रचात्वा स्थाप्य स्थाप्य

You can tie me to a stake and burn me, kill me, Or you can cut off my head—that would be fine. But I will never in any shape or form submit To my great enemy, the mental afflictions.

9
The Destruction of Mental Afflictions is Final

विष्यायान्त्रार्चाः खुव्याने न्याः खुद्याः विष्याः यात्र्याः विष्याः यात्र्याः विष्याः यात्र्याः विष्याः यात्र विष्याः यात्रव्याः विष्याः विषयः खुद्याः विष्याः यात्र्याः विषयः यात्र्याः विष्याः यात्र्याः विषयः यात्र्याः व

If you push a normal enemy out of your country, They can still go on to other lands, Make their home there, and get reinforcements; And then they can return.

The way in which the mental afflictions behave As enemies though is not the same.

। व्रेंच श्रेंच श्रेंच

The mental afflictions are such that Once I have eliminated them, Cleared them from my mind By using the eye of wisdom, They have nowhere else to go—No place they can make their home, No way to return and harm me. It all comes down to the fact That my mind is so very weak: I do not have the energy.

क्तिं अंट्रास्य स्थ्या ने प्याया न्या न्या स्थ्या स्या स्थ्या स्या स्थ्या स्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या स्थ्या

It's not true that the mental afflictions
Exist among objects, neither do they exist
Among the group of the powers,
Nor somewhere throughout, nor somewhere other.
There is nowhere at all that they can stay
To do harm to every living being.

They are like an illusion, and so I should eliminate this fear from my heart, And rely on the practice of making great efforts, Working to develop wisdom.

Why should I subject myself pointlessly
To the pains of the hells and the rest?

Here is the third point. Someone else might come and assert the following: "We could never be able to eliminate mental afflictions even once, because they grow with the mind itself, and exist as part of the very nature of things." *It's not true that the mental afflictions exist* by nature *among* the *objects* which we perceive: visual objects and the rest. If this were the case, then mental afflictions would start to grow even in enemy destroyers, as they looked upon visual objects and such.

युवाशःग्रीःदेवःश्रेश्रशः प्रवेतः सेवाशः व्याप्यः व्याप्यः व्याप्यः स्वेतः स्वेत

Neither do the mental afflictions exist in this way *among the group of the* physical *powers*, such as the eye. This is because a person who is directing his or her thoughts towards the meaning of the actual reality of things may still possess the power of the eye, and yet not have any mental affliction.

ग्रीत्रः याम्बर्धः याम्बर्धः याम्बरः य वित्रः याम्बरः याम्

Nor do the mental afflictions exist somewhere throughout these two possibilities, nor somewhere other than the two: once you have eradicated them from their very root, there is nowhere at all that they can stay: that they can by some kind of nature go and remain, to return then to do harm to every living being.

One might have the following thought: "These mental afflictions are empty of any natural kind of existence, but at the same time they do appear to have natural existence, and so they are like an illusion. As long as this is the case—because they do exist through some nature of their own—I could never eliminate them from their root." It is good though if I can eliminate this fear from my heart, and rely on the practice of making great efforts to remove my mental afflictions, through working to develop the wisdom which perceives emptiness.

Given that I therefore have at the present moment the ability to remove these afflictions, it is not good on the other hand that I *subject myself pointlessly* to the sufferings of the lower realms, *to hells and the rest. Why should I* put myself through these *pains?* Some commentators have also explained the previous lines as referring to the fact that, once we remove the seeds for the mental afflictions, they can no longer stay in these various places.

10
Listening to the Doctor

| | देश्यः स्याप्यस्य स्थः केत्र्रः त्वर्धः स्थः व

| मुर्यः प्रते प्रताः स्राध्यः प्रताः व्याः स्रोधः ।

In this way we must engage in different Kinds of contemplations and make great efforts For the purpose of accomplishing the rules As they have been described. If you—a patient who absolutely had To be treated with specific kinds of medicine—Refused to listen to your physician's advice How could you ever be cured?

11 What it Means to Perfect Giving

|मुक्तःयःहेःस्ट्रस्यःस्यःस्वित्। |मुक्तःयःहेःसःस्यःस्वितःधितःत्व। |मुक्तःयःहेःसःस्यःस्वाःस्व। |मुक्तःयःहेःस्ट्रसःस्यःस्वःस्व।

Suppose something were the perfection Of giving when it removed The poverty of every living being. If there were living beings though Who suffered still from hunger, How then could the Protectors of The past have reached the perfection?

ह्याबाहे ह्याबारा हो त्वराय स्वर्धित स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्धित स्वर्धित स्वर्धित स्वर्धित स्वर्धित स्वर्

Here is the first. Suppose someone were to assert the following: "We can posit something as the perfection of giving when the culmination of this perfection of giving results in removing the poverty of each and every living being." If though there were living beings who still suffered from hunger, and there are, how then could the Protectors of the past, the Buddhas, ever have reached the culmination of the perfection of giving? It would be illogical.

निर्देग्।यःश्रम्भः उत्तर्यः नउर्यः है। ।श्चेत्रः गुत्रः यः निरः श्रेम्भः गुर्मः। ।श्चेतः प्रतेः यः रेतः युत्रः निश्चः र्याः है। ।तेः स्मारे तेः श्रेम्भः केतः दें।

It was spoken that the perfection Of giving is the thought To give all that one has, Along with the results, To every living being. This then is the reason why It's the state of mind alone.

प्रश्रम् स्थान स्

Here is the second point, which is a kind of summary: "Therefore it was spoken that the culmination of the perfection of giving occurs when one has perfectly accustomed oneself to the kind of thought where one wishes to give all that one has—one's body, one's possessions, and the total sum of one's good deeds, along with the power of the virtue that results from giving these things away—to every living being. This then is the reason why, it is because of this, that giving is only something that depends upon the state of mind."

12 What it Means to Perfect the Ethical Life

१५:५य:श्र्याश्चर्यःयादः विवाः ह्य १५:५याः वार्श्चरः यादः विवाः ह्य

How could you ever chase fish and such To a place where no one could kill them?

Here is the first point. It must be incorrect to say that the culmination of the perfection of an ethical life should depend on trying to reach the end of the last living being who is being killed. Because *how could you ever chase* every wild beast, and every *fish, and* every other *such* being *to* some *place where no one could kill* any of *them*? You never could.

क्षिंट,ययु:श्रेश्वास,यु:स्यास्त्रीय,त्यर,यवटी विष्याधिश्वास,यु:स्यास्त्रीय,त्यर्थी

It is explained that the perfection Of an ethical way of life consists of Attaining a way of thinking wherein One wishes to abandon.

र्ण. र्रे. स्रुप्त, या. ह्याका यर अर्र्, जन्ना क्ष्या विभन्ना ग्रीता रा. स्याना स्थान स्य

यविष्यः यार्षेदः यार्शेदः यदे श्रेश्रश्रायदे । विश्वायविदः यश्राशे

Here is the second. Therefore, for this reason, it is explained in sutra that the culmination of the perfection of an ethical way of life consists of attaining the culmination of the constant practice of a way of thinking wherein one wishes to abandon any idea of harming someone else, or of stealing anything. The sutra at this point says, "What is the perfection of an ethical way of life? It is the way of thinking in which one abandons anything that is harmful to others."

13 What it Means to Perfect Patience

|श्रेस्रश्चर्यंश्चर्यं स्थाःस्यतः प्रति । |दे:द्याःयार्वेसःग्चीसःस्येदःस्थाःस्यद्यः |स्याःदे:स्रेस्रशःददे:याद्ययाः पर्वेसःस्। |द्याःदे:स्रस्याः स्ट्राःस्यस्यः द्वाः

It would be a complete impossibility Ever to destroy altogether those Irritating people, vast as space. But the destruction of a single object, The thought of anger, is comparable To destroying each and every enemy.

The third part, on the perfection of patience, has three sections: the point, a metaphor, and the connection between the point and the metaphor. Here is the first. You have reached the culmination of patience with the destruction of a single object—the thought of anger, which is comparable to destroying each and every one of your external enemies. You would have to admit that the culmination of this perfection is not something that depends on finishing off every possible object which could make you angry though, because it would be a complete, or entire, impossibility ever to accomplish the destruction of every single irritating person, for these are as limitless in extent as space itself. Therefore patience is also something that depends upon the mind.

|अःस्ट्रेट्यःवर्धः न्याःग्रीयः वार्धवायः शु। |द्रुयः अञ्चेतः र्वयः वाःतः त्यः वाः |सःस्ट्रेट्यः वर्धः वाःग्रीः वर्षः वीः |सःस्ट्रेट्यः वर्ध्यः वीःग्रीः वर्षः वीः |सःस्ट्रेट्यः वर्ध्यः वर्षः वार्धवायः दटः वर्षः

How could you ever find enough leather To cover the entire surface of Earth? Covering simply the soles of your feet Is comparable to the entire surface.

याः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्ययः स्वयः स

Here is the second point. Suppose you decided to cover the entire surface of Earth with leather, in order to prevent the thorns and so on there from hurting your feet. How could you ever find enough leather to do so? Even in this case you would simply wrap your own feet in enough leather to cover the area of the soles of your feet, in order to keep the thorns and such from hurting you. This would be comparable then to covering the entire surface of the Earth with leather.

Just the same it would be an impossibility For me to stop every single outer object; Rather I should stop this tendency of my own mind. Why should I stop all the others?

पर्ज्ञ स्वास्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र

Here is the third part. My present case is *the same* as this metaphor. *It would* be an impossibility for me to stop every single outer object that might bring me any kind of pain. Rather I should stop this tendency of my own mind to focus on these same objects and then feel anger. It is through the constant practice of this action that I could eventually bring patience to its culmination. Why though should I try to stop all the other objects, everything that could ever make me angry? I never could, and there is no need even to try.

ख्रिंद्र-पः लद्र-प्ययः देः त्यः स्वतः त्यः प्यदः। । सुंद्र-पः लदः प्ययः देः त्यः स्वतः त्यः प्यदः।

A single instance of clear mind Can as a result lead you To the Pure One or the like. Along these same lines the related actions Of body and speech are unable to give A result if one's efforts are feeble.

तत्। प्राप्ता प्रमानिक प्रमा

Here is the fourth point. Joyful effort as well is something that depends upon the mind, something that depends on your constant practice of it to bring it to its final conclusion. Consider the fact that a single small instance of clear and focused concentration, in which with a joyful state of mind you are practicing meditation upon something like the first concentration level, can as a result lead you even so far as a birth in the place of the Pure One (Brahma), or the like. Along these same lines, an instance of the mind, and the related actions of body and speech, which are not related to a powerful state of mind are unable to lead to a desired result, such as the development of the the state of mind of the first concentration level, if one's efforts are feeble—meaning where one has little joy in the task. Therefore it all depends on a powerful state of mind.

15 What it Means to Perfect Meditation

|प्रत्नुश्राचर्हेर्-८८-वे-८गाव-ब्रुव-ग्रुक्।
|श्रेमश्राचिव्य-वाधित्य-प्रश्नाच्य-प्राच्यान्।
|श्रेमश्राचिव्य-वाधित्य-प्रश्नाच्य-प्राच्यान्।
|प्रेन-वेर-देवा-प्रश्नाच्य-स्थान्य-स्थान्।

Suppose you attempt every kind of practice Where you repeat, or do other asceticisms, Over a long period of time. If you allow your mind to be distracted To other objects, then understanding The true nature is meaningless.

Here is the fifth point. The culmination of the perfection of meditation as well is something that depends on the mind—a mind which is free of dullness and agitation, and which is lucid; a mind which is under the constant influence of thoughts of sadness over this life. Suppose now that you attempt every kind of practice where you repeat a great number of secret mantras, or asceticisms, such as fasting or the like, over a long period of time. If you allow your mind to be distracted to other objects as you do these practices, then you will be unable to understand the true nature of things.

As the Buddha himself has stated in scripture, "Oh monks! The practices of asceticism or of recitation, or any of the like, are fruitless when the mind is distracted to the objects of desire." What Lord Buddha is saying is that practices done this way are *meaningless*, in the sense that they can never lead to the desired result.

16 What it Means to Perfect Wisdom

। त्राद्रं के के प्राप्त के का के कि का क

Suppose any particular person fails
To understand this secret of the mind;
The highest import, the principal teaching.
They may hope to reach bliss and smash all suffering,
But will wander nonetheless, just as they
Always have, without reaching their goal.

र्यार विष्ठात्मक्ष विकार या क्षेत्रका विकार या क्षेत्र विकार विकार या क्षेत्र विकार वि

Here is the sixth point. Wisdom is also something that depends upon the mind. Suppose any particular person fails to understand this secret of the mind, ultimate reality, because they are no proper vessel for being taught the highest import of all, the principal instruction of this teaching. It may be the case that they hope to reach matchless bliss, and to smash all the sufferings of the cycle of life. They will nonetheless be left without reaching the goal they wish for; they will be left wandering here and there, wherever, just as they always have been. Therefore the perfection of wisdom depends on the mind.

17 On Recollection

12,ज.लट.२८.लट.२.जर्चैट.1 12,ज.लट.२८.लट.२.जर्चैट.1

Because of this, recalling to mind The Buddhas will also come To him or her again and again.

र्ग्निन्यक्रम् निर्देश्याच्याच्यान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्तः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्तः स्यान्तः स्थान्तः स्थानः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः स्थान्तः

Here is the first. If any particular person performs the contemplation described above then, because of this, recalling to mind the high qualities of the Buddhas, along with those of the Dharma and the Sangha, will also come to him or her again and again. They will thus be able to develop with ease the practice of recalling the Three Jewels.

18 On Awareness

।श्र्मात्म्यात्म्याम्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म ।त्रश्चात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्या

Suppose a person reaches a point
Where they're able to keep their recollection
Very solid; where they are able
To use their mind to protect.
At this point it will lead to awareness,
And even should these two
Disappear, they nonetheless return.

याःश्विश्वायः निर्दे।

श्वायश्वायः स्त्रीः च्याः प्रत्यः प्रत्यः स्विशः स्विशः

Here is the second point. Suppose a person reaches a point where he or she is able to keep their recollection very solid—is able to use their mind to protect themselves against mental afflictions. At this point then the recollection will lead this person to gain a kind of awareness, where they are able to watch themselves and grasp properly the distinction between occasions when their actions are proper, and when they are improper. It is also the case that, even should these two attitudes slip and disappear at some point, they nonetheless return. Therefore the question of whether one becomes a master of Buddhist practice or not hinges upon how well one can maintain their recollection and awareness; and thus one should seek to become a master of these two attitudes.

The Idea of Freezing on the Spot

At the particular moment You should decide: This state of mind has something Wrong with it. At this point freeze Exactly as you are— Stay like a bump on a log. यान्यायर मुद्रा वर्षे वर् वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्

Here is the first. Whenever one is about to go somewhere, or do anything of the kind, one should at the particular moment—that is, before anything else—examine one's motivation: one should decide, "This state of mind has something wrong with it," or "This state of mind has nothing wrong with it." If at this point you find that your motivation does have something wrong with it, then you should apply the appropriate antidote, which is to freeze exactly as you are, like a bump on a log, and refuse to be moved by something which is not good.

20 How to Walk Down a Street

I should never look around Meaninglessly or with distraction, But rather be sure to fix my mind, And always keep my eyes lowered.

श्रिक्षः भ्रम्भः द्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्वाक्षः स्व भ्रम्भः स्वाक्षः स्व स्वाक्षः स्व

वर वृद्। । भूष्य द्याप्य र्रोदे के दुर्ग । देश वया वर्षे वाश सुप्य भूष पर वा

Here is the first. *I should never*, at any time, *look around* from side to side *meaninglessly*, with my mind *distracted*. This is because of the fact that, should I do so, my mind will get worse. Rather *I should be sure to fix my mind* on a virtuous object: whenever I look around, I should *always keep my eyes lowered*, looking ahead no farther than the length of a plowshare, [which is explained in scripture as one armspan].

বন্ধ:ব:২ঝ:বর্ষর:ক্র-:ব্-র্মা ইম:এম্বর:র্ম্ব্রমান্ধ:বন্ধ:বম:ব্রা

To refresh myself From looking this way, I should look around For the time being.

भ्रमानिक्षास्त्री विश्वश्चार्श्यान्यः न्यान्यः न्यान्यः विश्वरः विश्वरः विश्वरः विश्वरः विश्वरः विश्वरः विश्वर भ्रमानिक्षास्त्री विश्वश्चार्थः न्यान्यः न्यान्यः न्यान्यः विश्वरः विश्वर

Here is the second point. If the time should come to invigorate myself—that is, if I find that I have become tired *looking this way*—then *to refresh myself I should for the time being* raise my eyes, and *look around*.

|लट.रट.लट.र्.स्याश्चरम्बर.सी |प्रश्नाश्चर्याश्चरह्याश्चरत्त्रम्यास्त्रःसी |प्रश्नाश्च्याश्चर्याश्यस्यस्यस्यर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्चर्याश्

It may happen that someone Comes into my line of vision; I should look at them and say, "It is good to see you." I should look around me On all sides again and again, To check if there are dangers Or the like on the way.

ह्रीर.लट.रट.लट.र्.ह्रियोश्च.पश्चर.यक्षे.यर.विह्य भर्थर.रे.ह्यूटश.यश्चर.पश्चर.यक्षेश्चर्यश्चर्यात्याश्चर्यात्यस्याश्चर्यस

Here is the third point. When I have started to look around this way, it may happen that someone comes into my line of vision, and approaches me. At this point I should look at them and give them a smile, and say, "It is good to see you." Moreover, as I move down the road it may be necessary to check whether or not there are any dangers or the like on the way, and in such a case I should look around me on all sides, again and again.

| त्यूंद्रमालट्यंद्ट्यंशे| | भर्यंद्रमालट्यंत्र्यंत्रम्याय्यंत्रम्या | भ्रत्याय्यंत्रम्यायः | स्याय्यंत्रम्यायः सुद्धरायस्यायम् | द्याय्यंत्रम्यायः सुद्धरायस्यायम्

When I've finished refreshing myself I should then turn around, And look at the things behind me; I should check In front and in back of me, And then either go, or come.

श्यानायम्यातायन्यन्त्राम्यायन्त्राम्यायन्त्राप्त्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राम्यात्राम्यात्राम्यात्राम्य भ्रित्यानान्त्राम्यात्राम्यायन्त्राच्यात्र

Here is the fourth point. When I have finished refreshing myself and it is time to go on, then I should turn around and look at the things behind me. I should check in front of me and in back of me—to see if there is anything there like a cliff—and then either go, or come, as may be fitting.

21 Watching the Mind

My mind is a wild elephant:
I must tie it properly to the strong stake
Of a spiritual object of focus.
I must try with my every effort
To watch that it stays this way,
Without ever getting loose.

कुर.ज.इ.क्रंर.चरेचोन्नात्राः वक्र्यः चर.चे.क्रंर.वचर.त्रांचेश्चान्नात्राः चेत्राः बुर.श्रे्श्वात्राः व्यक्तिः भुः वर्धिः चर्ष्याः तत्र्। निर.स्.चु। श्रुभन्नाः तपुः रश्चानाः तपुः य भ्राचेश्वाः तप्तः वर्धिः श्रुभाः वर्धिः वर्षः व

Next comes the second point, on how to watch one's mind. Here again there are two divisions: tying the mind to some virtuous object, and checking whether or not you are keeping your mind one-pointedly fixed upon a virtue or not.

Here is the first. My mind is an elephant that has yet to be trained, and is still wild. I must tie it properly to a strong stake; that is, to the spiritual object where I have promised to keep the focus of my mind, one-pointedly. I must try now with my every effort to watch that it stays this way, without ever getting loose.

। के त्र रूप के त्र प्रहें त्र प्रहें त्र प्रहों। । स्नुद्र रुवा व्यक्षित ग्राप्त स्टें त्र रूप प्रद्रा । व्यक्षा की प्रोप्त प्रहों द्र रहे रूप

1ने खूर धीर वा र्शे र्शेर वहन

No matter what I will make efforts In single-pointed concentration That never for even a second slips. I will examine my thoughts Constantly in a certain way, saying "What is my mind engaged in?"

22 Prioritizing Your Actions

|यादःवियाःयसस्यःहेःग्वरःयस्स्यसःय। |देःयसःयावदःदुःसेःयससःस्रे। |देरःयाहदःयःयोःयससःयःयोस। |देरःहेदःरेःवियाःयसुयःयरःग्री

। तेशः व वे त्यक्षयः से त्युर।
। वेशः चलेव स्याध्येतः से त्युरः से ।
। वेशः चलेव स्याध्येतः से के के व से द्या । वेशः चलेव स्याध्येतः से के के व्यक्षितः से । । वेशः चलेव स्याध्येतः से त्युरः से । । वेशः चलेव स्याध्येतः से त्युरः ।

With any action first consider, And then undertake it, Without thinking of any other. If you focus your mind on this, Then for the time being undertake To practice it alone.

If you keep this way then everything Will come out perfectly;
Otherwise you will fail in both.
If you follow this too then
The secondary afflictions of failing
In watchfulness will never grow.

One may raise the following objection: "The practice of an ethical way of life is superior to the practice of giving; how is it then that we are supposed to leave off the former practice for the latter?" With any series of actions that you must practice in a definite order, you must be careful to consider carefully which should come first. Then you should undertake this first action and not think of some other one.

If you are starting with the practice of giving, if you are focussing your mind on this, then you should for the time being undertake to practice it only. If you train yourself this way where there is a path that must be followed in a certain fixed order, then everything will come out perfectly; whereas if you do otherwise, and reverse the order somehow, you will fail in bringing both the earlier and the later steps to their proper conclusion.

There are *secondary* types of *mental affliction* which are a kind of failure to understand the stages of the path, *a failure of watchfulness*, and *if you follow* this understanding of the stages then *they will never grow* strong within you. As such you must become a master in understanding the proper order of the stages of the path.

23 Learning to Check Yourself

|च्रे:र्सेदे:वाहस:दे:सू:र्सेवास:५८:।

|र्-स्यक्रम् स्वास्य स्वास्य

Even if I must engage In all sorts of useless conversation, Or all those many kinds Of interesting spectacles, Still I should abandon Any desire for them at all.

१र्न्न् स्त्रेन् स्त्रं स्त्रं मार्डन् न्तः। १र्त्या विषया वर्ष्ण्या स्त्रेन् स्त्रा स्त्रेन् स्त्रा स्त्रेन् स्त्रा स्त्रेन् स्

One should recall the rules Of Those Who Have Gone to Bliss, And out of terror desist immediately From any activity such as digging the earth, Cutting living plants, or drawing in the soil Without any particular need.

|यहर्यस्य स्थान्य । यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता । यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता । यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता । यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता । यहर्यस्य प्रस् |यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता विषय । यहर्यस्य प्रस्ता । यहर्षस्य । यहर्य । यहर्षस्य । यहर्यस्य ।

Whenever I feel a wish to move Or any wish at all to express myself, I will first check my own mind; I resolve firmly to act In accord with what is right. विट्ट के स्टट के मुक्क स्टट वि विट्ट के के स्ट्र विट्ट के स्ट्र क

Whenever I feel as though I want To have attachment, or else anger, I should keep from going into action, I should keep from speaking out, I should stay as a bump on a log.

|प्रायाः हे: क्रेंड्रिंग् स्वीतः स्वरुषः ययस्य । |प्रायाः हे: दः क्रियाः क्षेड्रिंग स्वरुषः ययस्य । |प्रायाः हे: दः क्षेड्रिंग स्वरुषः ययस्य । |प्रायाः हे: क्षेड्रिंग स्वरुषः स्वरुषः ।

Suppose I feel agitation,
Or an urge to humiliate someone,
Or pride, or else conceit;
Suppose it occurs to me
That I should expose
Another person's faults,
Or deceive another
By pulling the wool over their eyes.

|त्रिक्तंत्वेर्यावर्ष्ट्र्यंत्रः यो व्यावित्त्रकाः यो व्यावित्त्यकाः यो व्यावित्त्रकाः यो व्यावित्त्यत्रकाः यो व्यावित्त्यत्याय्यवित्त्यत्याय्यवेत्त्यत्याय्याय्यवेत्त्यत्याय्याय्याय्याय्याय्य

Or suppose a time comes
That I feel the urge
To sing my own praises,
Disparage others, or else contend.
In every such situation
I should stay like a bump on a log.

।हे.क्.चिट.चर्चार.क्षे.चायाश्वार.द्वी ।यार्श्वार्यार.क्षे.चायाश्वर.द्वीर.या ।यार्श्वार्याश्वर.द्वीर.या ।य्येत्वार्श्वश्वर.द्वीर.या ।हे.क्.चिट.चल्चिर.यावश्वर.या

Suppose as well that I feel A desire for gain, or else for honor; For a great circle of servants, Or else the service of others. On these occasions too I should stay Still as a bump on a log.

|यावनःर्देनःध्ययःयरःवर्देरःयःदरः।
|र्र्ःदेनःयाकेरःयरःवर्देरःयःदरः।
|श्चुःयरःवर्देदःधवेरःयेवःश्रेश्रश्रश्चा

Suppose I ignore the needs of others, Or strive only for my own needs, Or else get the urge to simply talk; When I am like this, I should stay As still as a bump on a log.

|भै'वर्डेर्'यो'र्यो'यहैम्थ'य'र्र'। |रे'वलैक'र्सेहेंय'सु'र्डेर'र्र'।

|२८:मी:र्सुयायःबियःश्रेययःगुटःव। |२८:मी:र्सुयायःबियःग्रेययःगुटःव।

Suppose I can no longer endure, Or feel laziness, and fear. Just so I might want to act In some uncontrolled way, Or engage in some irrelevant chatter, Or get the thought to feel Some bias for my own kind. At such times too I should stay As still as a bump on a log.

I should in this way check myself
For thoughts filled with mental afflictions,
Or those thoughts where I want
To make some kind of meaningless efforts.
Whenever they do come,
I should act like a warrior,
Using the antidotes
To keep my mind firm and steady.

What Makes Some Virtues More Powerful than Others

|ह्या:यर:अर्देब:लेब:ग्रीक:यश्चर:यवम। |याक्षेब:र्य:प्येब:बे:यश्चर:यःकेन। |प्येब:हब:न्र-वे:यब:वर्देग्यःलेटः।

।য়ৄয়ৢয়য়য়ৄয়য়য়য়য়য়য়ৢয়ৢ

The power of the virtue
Is so much more powerful
If done all the time,
Motivated by strong enthusiasm,
Only by the antidote, or performed
Towards objects of high spiritual qualities,
Those who've been of great benefit,
Or those who are suffering.

यश्यत्वर्गम् विद्।

त्वायार्थस्य स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्

Here is the first. Since the power of the virtue is so much more powerful, I should exert myself in the following kinds of virtuous activity:

- * Giving which is done "all the time," meaning on a regular basis;
- * That which is *motivated by strong enthusiasm*—performed with fierce good feelings;
- * That which is *motivated only by* attitudes such as a lack of attachment—by thoughts which provide *the antidote* for negativities;
- * That which is *performed towards* the highest objects: *objects of high spiritual qualities* such as the Three Jewels or the like, *and* objects who have been *of great benefit*, such as your parents;
- * That which is performed towards objects which are *suffering*—the poor and the like.

25 Learn to Depend on Yourself

स्थित्रः यर नु न साधित्रः के निष्यः स्थाः स्

I should become a master, and learn
To have great faith and enthusiasm;
They will lead me to perform deeds at all times.
I will learn to accomplish all kinds of virtue
Even if there's no one else at all
On whom I can depend.

26
Learning to Choose between Different Good Deeds

I will perform the perfections Of giving and the rest So they are heightened ever further, And never give up the greater for the less: Concentrate on others' aims.

र्याट्र नुप्त क्षेत्र स्वरेष्य स्वरेष्य स्वर्थित स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्य स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्य स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्य स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्था । श्चित्र स्वर्था स्वर्य स्वर

चुन्निस्य प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्रम्भ प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्र प्राप्त प्र प्र प्राप्त प्र प्र प्राप्त

Here is the third. *I will perform the perfections of giving and "the rest,"* meaning all of those up to wisdom, in such a way that *they are heightened ever further;* that is, so they increase in strength. Whenever I engage in the perfections of giving, an ethical way of life, or any of the others, I should *never give up* activities which are of *greater* virtuous power *for* those which are of *less*—I should rather concentrate my efforts on the greater.

These lines are indicating, by implication, the following: where one is unable to perform both the action of lesser power and the one of greater power—where a time has come where one must choose between the two—then we should give up the deed of lesser virtue to prevent the greater one from being lost. How do we establish which deeds are greater, and which are lesser? If for example there is a choice between accomplishing one's own aims or someone else's aims in this present life—if by bringing about one you would lose the other—then you should *concentrate on others' aims*.

27
The Principles of Greater Good

|दगवात्तःसम्मान्तः। |ह्यानःहःसद्यःयःस्टःयाञ्चेयामःयम। |ह्यानःहःसद्यःयःस्टःयाञ्चेयामःयम। |दगवातःसम्मान्यःयःसम्।

They should in this way learn, And then make efforts always To fill the needs of others.

Those who possess compassion, Who see the distant, have allowed Even the prohibited.

Here is the first. One may ask the following question: "Bodhisattvas *should, in this way* mentioned above, *learn* the art of which actions to take up, and which to give up. *And then they should always make efforts to fill the needs of others.* Isn't it true though that, because filling the needs of others may require us to undertake a wide variety of different actions, we might ourselves become sullied by some bad deeds?"

Those who possess compassion, the Buddhas, see directly even those objects which are "distant," in the sense of being abstruse. There are certain actions, like the seven bad deeds of body and speech, which they have prohibited for listeners—for those who are working primarily for their own aims. On certain extraordinary occasions though, they have allowed even these same actions to bodhisattvas; when such persons perform these acts they are not only not a bad deed, but rather become the accumulation of great goodness.

The *Sutra on Skilful Means, the Great Secret,* for example mentions the ship captain named Great Compassion, who killed evil persons and thereby erased many eons of his future suffering in the cycle of life. There is also the incident that is stated to have occurred with the Brahmin youth named Karma.

The phrase "those who possess compassion, who see to a distance" can also be explained as referring to these bodhisattvas—the ones for whom the seven deeds of body and speech are allowed—themselves. [It should be noted at this point that the practice of performing one of the seven bad deeds for great goodness is severely restricted, to those who have been practicing the bodhisattva path literally for millions of years, and should not be construed as allowed for others.]

28 Taking Care of Your Vehicle

|न्ययः प्रस्तिकः प्रस |देश्वरः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिक्षः स्त्रिक्षः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिकः स्त्रिक |न्ययः प्रस्तिकः स्त्रिकः स्त

I carry out the holy Dharma
With my body; I should never harm it
For some minor benefit.
If I am able to act this way,
Then I can quickly fulfil
The hopes of every living being.

ह्याबात्तर त्यीर प्रतृत्ते रात्त्रा । प्राचीत्र प्रचीत्त्रा । त्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्रचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्रचीत्र प्रचीत्

Here is the second section. *My body* is a base from which *I carry out the holy Dharma*; it is something with which, if I care for it properly, I can accomplish vast purposes for myself and others. *I should never* do any kind of *harm* to *it* merely *for some minor benefit* that it might do for someone else—I should shield it in the same way I would an open wound. Why is this so? Because *if I am able to act this way, then I can*—by using the spiritual leisure and fortune which I've found—reach the culmination of the practice of the three trainings, and in this way *quickly fulfill the hopes of every living being*. As the *Four Hundred Verses* says,

We should admittedly view this body as though it were the enemy;
But all the same it is a thing we must protect as well.
It is an action which creates tremendous stores of merit
To live a life of many years maintaining one's morality.

29
On the Proper Limits of Giving

I should never give away my body With impure thoughts of compassion. I should no matter what give away My body, to achieve great goals In both this and the future.

|गशुम्रायादी| नुदाकुनाकोममान्यवान्दार्याद्रमात्युमावाकीमायाकोममाउदावा

Here is the third part. It is admittedly true that bodhisattvas do, from the very beginning, offer their own bodies and the like to living beings from the very bottom of their hearts. *I should never* though perform the asceticism of *giving away* the flesh of *my body* or something of the like to someone who requests it in a way which involves an *impure* version of the *thoughts of compassion* where I am supposed to cherish others more than myself; that is, in such a way that I would feel distaste, or regret my offering later, or anything of the like. This point is expanded upon in the *Compendium of Training*, where a sutra is quoted which states that giving away things at the wrong time is the work of demons.

त्रः श्रीयः तर्यः श्रीयः तर्यः श्रीयः तर्यः श्रीयः तर्यः त्रीयः तर्यः त्रीयः तर्यः त्रीयः तर्यः त्रीयः तर्यः व त्रः श्रीयः तर्यः त्रीयः तर्यः श्रीयः त्रीयः त् । प्रत्यायः त्रीयः त्रीयः

When there comes a time however when I have, on my side, freed myself from stinginess and other obstacles to the perfection of giving, and when I could without any problems thereby accumulate a great deal of virtuous energy, then I should no matter what give away my body, for this would act as a cause for me to achieve great goals in both this and all my future lives.

30
Rules for Giving the Dharma

 I should not teach the Dharma
To those who have no respect;
To those not ill wearing veils;
Who hold an umbrella, staff, or weapon;
Or who cover their heads with cloth.

|५८४५'२४'वर'५८'कु'के'५८'। |भुक्षेत्र'यर'स्ट्रिंके'के'द्रेश्वा |५८४५'५८'८४केंग्रिकेंश्व्यद्रेश्वा |५८४५'दर्ग्यकेंग्रिकेंश्व्यद्रेश्वा

I should not teach the profound And far-reaching aspects to the lesser, Nor a woman without a male. I should follow the behavior Of respecting all Dharma equally, No superior or inferior kinds.

Here is the second. *I should not teach the profound and far-reaching aspects* of the Dharma *to* those of *lesser* minds, to those who are not fit to receive these teachings. *Nor* should I teach the Dharma to *a woman* alone, *without* another *male* present.

It is further stated that one has committed the bad deed of rejecting the Dharma if one discriminates between different parts of the teaching, by saying for example that the teachings of the greater and lesser ways are, respectively, *superior and inferior kinds of Dharma*—one better than the other; one more proper than the other; one a way to enlightenment, and the other not; or anything of the like. I should therefore follow a code of *behavior* where I *respect all of them equally*, and put each of them into practice.

31 We Must Teach to a Person's Level

I should never take one who is fit
To receive the teachings of the far-reaching
And introduce them to a teaching which is lesser.
Neither should I ever abandon the code
Of behavior, nor abuse the open and secret
Teachings through deceiving someone.

32 On the Fact that Buddhists Should Have Good Manners

|र्के:विट:न्ट:के:क्रकेव:क:न्य |र्नेर:व:क:के:न्याव:यर:द्या |याडे:व:केंक्यक:यवट:वेंट्क:क्रुंन्:यवे। |क्:न्ट:बट:व:र्नेर:व:क्रुन्।

I should, whenever I throw out
The cleaning stick, or spit,
Cover them up.
Disposing of urine or anything similar
In water or on a piece of ground
Which others use is rebuked.

Here is the first. Bodhisattvas who have also left the home life must, except in those cases which are specifically allowed, strictly maintain each detail of the code of behavior spoken in the collection of scripture devoted to discipline, which is something shared by both the greater and lesser ways. And even those bodhisattvas who are still leading the home life must as well maintain these points, in order to preserve the faith of others.

Therefore I should—whenever I throw out the so-shing stick which I use to clean my mouth, or whenever I spit—cover them up with dirt or the like. And since I would be rebuked by the powerful pleasure creatures and other such beings if I did so, I should avoid ever disposing of excrement or urine, or else mucus from my nose, or anything similar in water or on a piece of ground which others use along with me.

वित्रात्मार्यं प्रमुक्षः स्रोत्मा स्रो

I should never eat with my mouth stuffed, Nor with noise, or with my mouth open. Neither should I stick my legs out while I sit Nor rub my shoulders together.

रि.श्रकेशत्तरःशुःकुत्। ।इश्राचीश्वाक्षत्रःश्वरतात्ताक्ष्रश्चात्राद्वात्त्रःश्वर्षाः विद्वात्त्रःश्वर्षाः । विद्वात्त्रःश्वर्षः विद्वात्त्रः । विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः । विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः । विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्तः विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्त्रः विद्वात्तः विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्तः विद्वात्ते विद्वाते विद्वात्ते विद्वात्ते

I should never eat in such a way that my mouth is totally stuffed with the food, or so that I make a loud smacking noise or anything of the like, or else with my mouth wide open. When I sit on a Dharma throne or similar seat, I should never stick my legs out touching the ground, or such. Neither should I rub myself on my shoulders together, meaning at the same time. It is however no fault if you rub yourself on your shoulders one at a time.

|यर्लेक्'स'स्याःश्वक्ष्यं यावस्यः नयाः हु।
|यद्वियाः हेक्'स्यः न्दः युक्तः यः युक्ताः से खुः स्यः युक्ताः से खु |यद्वियाः हेक्'स्यः न्दः युक्तः यः युक्ताः से खुः स्यः युक्ताः से खुः स्यः युक्ताः से युक्ताः से युक्ताः से य

I should never stay in or on A single conveyance, a single bed, Or in the same place with another Who is a woman. I should avoid Any kind of behavior which might cause People of the world to lose their faith, Whether the obvious or the acquainted.

१६.ज.श्र्यात्रात्तव्र, पर्व्य, तार्च्य, वार्च्य, वार्च, वार्च्य, वार्च, वा

द्रमान्यम् स्वाद्धाः । स्वाद्धाः स्वत्यः स्वाद्धाः स्वत्यः स्वाद्धाः स्वाद्

[As a monk,] *I should never stay in or on a single conveyance,* something like a horse or the like, or *on a single bed, or in the same place with another* person *who is a woman.* Even those bodhisattvas who are laypeople should avoid staying together with women who are not their own relatives.

In brief, I should avoid any kind of behavior which might cause people of the world to lose their faith, whether it is behavior that is obviously a problem to everyone everywhere, or whether it is something peculiar to that particular place or time, and therefore something that I might not already be aware of, but would have to acquaint myself with.

विष्यः स्ट्राच्यः व्यक्ष्यः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राचः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राचः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राच्यः स्ट्राचः स्ट्राचः स

I should never point something out With my individual fingers, But rather use all my right hand, Right and with respect.
Thus too should I guide Any person along a way.

33
On Being Mindful of Our Bodies

।এবা:य:ঀয়:केर:वर्भुंद:য়ेद:हे। ।उद:बद:वर्भुंद:यःश्चुःवश्चवाराःय। |বাৰ্ষ:ব্.স.বর্ষপ্রমান্ত্র-মূ। |আ্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যান্ত্র্যা

I should never gesture with my hands In a very animated way, but rather Move them only a slight bit And make some type of noise Or snapping with them. Were I to act differently though It would show a lack of control.

वियासकेर्य्य स्थान्य स्थान्य विद्यासकेर्य स्थान्य स्यान स्थान्य स्थान

I should sleep in the desired direction, In the way the Savior laid down in "nirvana," With awareness from the very beginning I should be sure to rise up quickly.

यायाययन् सर्याः श्री श्री स्वार्थः श्री स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्

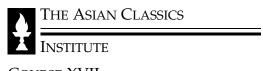
Here is the third. Whenever I go to sleep, I should emulate *the way that the Savior* acted *when he laid down* and pretended to pass *into "nirvana."* That is, I should first lie with my head *in the desired direction*. Then I should lay with my right side down, and place my left leg atop my right. I should put my head down on my right hand, and wrap myself nicely in my dharma robes, and *sleep*.

As I go off to sleep I should place my mind on a virtuous object, and utilize the attitudes of recollection and *awareness*. *From the very beginning*, as sleep comes, *I should be sure* to keep a very luminous state of mind, where light fills my mind, and I should reflect upon how I will *rise up* from my sleep *quickly*. As I drift off I should think of how I am about to sustain my body with the sleep, and then afterwards make great efforts in performing virtuous deeds.

34
On Doing What We Can

|च्र-रक्ष्य:श्रेश्रश्चर्यःश्चित्रःयः द्या |क्ष्यःश्चित्रःयः रक्षे:याश्चर्यःयः यथा |श्चेश्वशःश्चरःयः यो:श्चित्रःयः द्या |देशःयरः दे:श्चेतःश्चरःयरः द्या

The different types of activities
Described as something that bodhisattvas
Should undertake are limitless.
I must acquaint my mind with them,
And practice til the time arrives,
As it surely will, when I can
Put them in my own life.



COURSE XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class One

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for the <i>Diamond-Cutter Sutra</i> .	(Tibetan track give
Tibetan in Tibetan; English track give Tibetan in phonetics.)	

- 2) Explain the three meanings of the word "diamond" in the title.
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
- 3) Why is it important to include the original word "cutter" in the title?

4) Describe the object we deny when we speak of "emptiness." (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word for "object we deny.")
5) Name the four bodies of a Buddha, and describe each one briefly. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
6) Name the three elements of the act of giving, and what it means "not to see" them.
(Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the object that we deny when we speak of "emptiness".
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDCE VVII

COURSE XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Two

1) Name and describe the principle most important in reaching an intellectual understanding of emptiness at the path of preparation. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, explain in English.)

2) Give the name of the state of mind following the direct perception of emptiness at the path of seeing, and list the four objects understood at this point. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

name:

a)

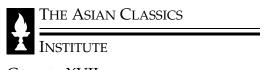
b)

c)

d)

3) Give at least two actual examples of the four objects listed in question two.	
a)	
b)	
c)	
d)	
4) Did the Buddha, in his former life, feel pain as his limbs were slowly cut off by the king of Kalingka, and he understood the emptiness of the three elements? Explain some detail.	
5) Why didn't he feel any hatred at that moment?	

6) Why do things change, and why do some things in our world cause other things? (For example, why does medicine always work; or why are some investment strategies always successful?)
7) Explain why the viewpoint expressed by Hwashang and others, that morality is unnecessary because things are empty, is totally mistaken.
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on how—because things are empty—we must then be moral. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Three
1) Name the principal commentary that we will be using for our study of the vows of the bodhisattva; give the author's full name and dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Give the short definition of bodhichitta taught by Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Describe Je Tsongkapa's reaction to the idea that practitioners of the secret way do not need to follow the other two sets of vows.
4) Describe the kind of person who can grant the vows of a bodhisattva.
5) Describe the kind of person who can take the vows of the bodhisattva.

6) List the first nine root downfalls of the bodhisattva vows, using the short verse for Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	ms
(1)	
(2)	
(3)	
(4)	
(5)	
(6)	
(7)	
(8)	
(9)	
7) List the 10th through the 18th root downfalls of the bodhisattva vows, using the sh verse forms. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	ıor
(10)	
(11)	
(12)	
(13)	

Course XVII, Class Three, Homework, cont.
(14)
(15)
(16)
(17)
(18)
8) Describe the result which is required for the 11th root downfall to occur.
9) Describe how the 13th root downfall is committed.
10) The 18th root downfall, and one other before it, are particularly serious and occu whether or not the four mental afflictions called the "chains" are all present. Name this other root downfall and describe it briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Meditation assignment: Analytical meditation, 15 minutes per day on the first four roo downfalls, checking how close you have come to committing each during the last 24 hours. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	INSTITUTE
0	NATTI

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Four
1) Name the four "chains": the four mental afflictions that bind you, and which must all be present in order for a "major" instance of these afflictions to occurwhich destroys one's root vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Why is it wrong to be overly comforted by the fact that, if you destroy a root vow, you can take it over again?
3) Name three different ways that a person can lose his or her bodhisattva vows.
a)
b)
c)

4) Describe the kind of person you must be to break one of the rules of body and speech out of compassion, in certain very extraordinary circumstances.
5) Name the four points of the practice of virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
6) Explain what the Protector, Maitreya, advises we should do if we find that some Buddhist teaching doesn't suit us for now.
7) Name the four white deeds, and for each explain the black deed for which it acts as an antidote. (Tibetan track name white deeds in Tibetan and explain the black deeds in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

8) Describe the five steps involved in keeping the bodhisattva vows well.
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
9) Can a person break a secondary vow out of mere forgetfulness, or does the motivation have to be one of the mental afflictions?
10) Name the four typical causes why a person might break their bodhisattva vows (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

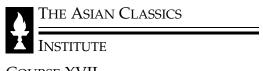
11) Name the four antidotes for these four causes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)a)b)c)

Course XVII, Class Four, Homework, cont.

d)

Meditation assignment: Analytical meditation, 15 minutes per day, on the four causes that can make a person break the vows, and their antidotes.

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Five

1) Give the name of the principal text we will be using for our study of the realms of
existence, along with the name of its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track
answer in Tibetan and Sanskrit.)

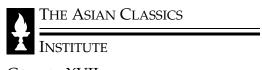
2) Explain how the desire realm can be divided into twenty different parts. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) What is the nature of the "desire" in the expression "desire realm"?

4) According to the highest school of Buddhism, what ultimately causes each of the different realms and types of birth?

5) Name the one general cause, and then the three specific causes that can lead us to a birth as a craving spirit. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
6) Name one general cause, and then two specific causes, for birth as an animal.
7) Name and describe briefly the six kinds of suffering that we must undergo. (Tibetan
track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

8) The existence of intermediate beings is also proven by statements of the Buddha Describe the three conditions under which, according to the Buddha, a child will form in the mother's womb. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
9) How does an intermediate being enter the state of a human womb birth?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, memorize the six sufferings, and review specific instances of them in your life. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

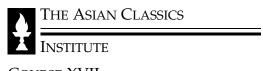


Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Six
1) Name the four different kinds of sustenance, and give examples of each. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan, and explain in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) What is the function of these types of sustenance?
3) Name and describe the eight hot hells. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

Course XVII, Class Six, Homework, cont.

7) Describe the awareness of death which is not the one which we seek to develop through meditation.
8) Describe the awareness of death which is the one which we seek to develop through meditation.
9) Name the three reasons behind the second principle of death meditation:
contemplating that there is no certainty when we will die. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
10) State the three resolutions that we should make after understanding the nine reasons for the three principles.
a)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: Fifteen minutes per day, meditate upon the day you will become a Buddha. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Seven

- 1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan words for Buddhist discipline, and explain the literal meaning of the term. (Tibetan track answer all in Tibetan.)
- 2) Describe the relationship between Buddhist discipline, and Lord Buddha and his teachings.

3) Explain the role of the extraordinary training of an ethical way of life in the development of the other two extraordinary trainings, especially as explained by Je Tsongkapa in his *Epistle on Ethics*.

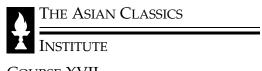
4) Name the early Sanskrit commentary which forms the basis for the study of Buddhist discipline in Tibetan monasteries; give also the author, and his approximate date. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

5) Describe the motivation with which one should engage in a study of Buddhist discipline.

6) In the opening lines of his text, Je Tsongkapa mentions that the vows of individual freedom constitute the subject matter of the scriptures on Buddhist discipline. Explain why these vows are given this name. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
7) Name the six categories by which Je Tsongkapa explains the vows of individual freedom. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
8) Give a general description of the vows of individual freedom by quoting directly the relevant two and a half lines of Je Tsongkapa's root text.
9) Name the five rules, and one additional part, of the lifetime layperson's vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
Meditation assignment: Review daily with an analytical meditation the five vows and one additional part of the layperson's lifetime vow. See how close you might have come to committing any of these in the last 24 hours, and then also rejoice in how far away you

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

might have acted (for example, by protecting life).



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Eight
1) Name five things which can cause any of the vows of individual freedom to be lost. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
,
e)
2) Describe the two results of keeping these vows. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
~,

3) Name the two "consistent" consequences for each of the ten non-virtues, following the <i>Sutra on the Ten Levels</i> and similar works.
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

4) Describe the "environmental" consequence of performing each of the ten.	
(1)	
(2)	
(3)	
(4)	
(5)	
(6)	
(7)	
(8)	
(9)	
(10)	
5) Name and explain briefly the four special qualities of the teachings on the steps enlightenment. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)	s to
a)	
b)	

23

Course XVII, Class Eight, Homework, cont.
c)
d)
6) Finding a proper relationship with one's Lama is considered the foundation of the entire Buddhist path. Name and describe briefly the ten qualities of a qualified Lama from the classic source—the <i>Ornament of the Sutras</i> . (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on why taking and keeping the vows of individual freedom is related to achieving nirvana and Buddhahood.

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	TROP VIII

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Nine

1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

2) Describe briefly the event in Master Shantideva's life which taught the monks of Nalandra Monastery that they should never judge a person from his or her outward appearance. (Tibetan track also give in Tibetan the name which was given to this master by certain misguided people.)

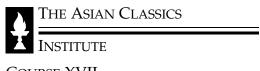
3) Name the ten chapters of the *Guide*. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

- (1)
- (2)
- (3)
- (4)
- (5)
- (6)
- (7)
- (8)
- (9)
- (10)

4) Name and describe first five metaphors used to describe the benefits of the wish fo enlightenment.
a)
1.\
b)
c)
d)
e)
5) Explain why nothing less then this precious wish could ever transform your entir world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.
6) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.

7) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.
8) Name three important reasons why we should make great efforts in the practice of purifying ourselves through all four of the forces, together. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
9) Name three different levels of virtue in which we can rejoice.
a)
b)
c)
10) Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.

11) Name and describe four kinds of dedication, and then describe what it is we are dedicating.	
a)	
b)	
c)	
d)	
What we are dedicating:	
12) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?	
Meditation assignment: For 15 minutes a day in meditation, practice imagining the moment in the future when you yourself experience, directly, the true wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta): a physical sensation of a shaft of clear light coming out of your chest, going out and reaching every living being, to help them; and knowing that you will spend every moment of the rest of your life serving others, especially in the highest ways (in learning the Dharma). Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):	

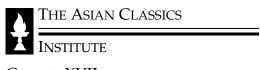


Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class 1en
1) Describe four things that uplift our hearts as we first gain the two forms of the wish. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Name five ways in which the wish has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

3) <i>How</i> is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?
4) Name four different steps in the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us.
a)
b)
c)
d)
5) Give the short version of the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
6) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
7) What does Gyaltsab Je have to say about the idea that a strong love for the Path, and hatred for your mental afflictions, are mental afflictions themselves?

8) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends or a misperception?
9) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?
10) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)
11) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma
through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, contemplating whether the perfection of giving does or does not depend upon its external perfection Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class One
1) Explain the three meanings of the word "diamond" in the title.
a)
b)
c)
2) Why is it important to include the original word "cutter" in the title?

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
Cor	IDOR VIII

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Two
1) Give the name of the state of mind following the direct perception of emptiness at the path of seeing, and list the four objects understood at this point. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
name:
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Give at least two actual examples of the four objects listed in question one.
a)
b)
c)
d)

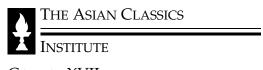
3) Did the Buddha, in his former life, feel pain as his limbs were slowly cut off by the king of Kalingka, and he understood the emptiness of the three elements? Explain in some detail.

4) Why do things change, and why do some things in our world cause other things? (For example, why does medicine always work; or why are some investment strategies always successful?)

4	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
0	NA III

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

The Great facts of Baddinshij fait 1110
Quiz, Class Three
1) Give the short definition of bodhichitta taught by Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Describe Je Tsongkapa's reaction to the idea that practitioners of the secret way do not need to follow the other two sets of vows.
3) List the 10th through the 18th root downfalls of the bodhisattva vows, using the short verse forms. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
(10)
(11)
(12)
(13)
(14)
(15)
(16)
(17)
(18)



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Four
1) Name three different ways that a person can lose his or her bodhisattva vows.
a)
b)
c)
2) Describe the kind of person you must be to break one of the rules of body and speech out of compassion, in certain very extraordinary circumstances.
3) Explain what the Protector, Maitreya, advises we should do if we find that some Buddhist teaching doesn't suit us for now.

4) Name the four white deeds, and for each explain the black deed for which it acts as an antidote. (Tibetan track name white deeds in Tibetan and explain the black deeds in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
5) Name the four typical causes why a person might break their bodhisattva vows (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
Cot	JRSE XVII

The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Five
1) Give the name of the principal text we will be using for our study of the realms of existence, along with the name of its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan and Sanskrit.)
2) Explain how the desire realm can be divided into twenty different parts. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) According to the highest school of Buddhism, what ultimately causes each of the different realms and types of birth?
4) Name and describe briefly the six kinds of suffering that we must undergo. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

4	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
Cot	JRSE XVII

c)

The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Six
1) What is the length of time that a person must accumulate the collections of merit and wisdom to become a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan, from the root text.)
2) Name the four steps in the contemplation of death. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) Describe the awareness of death which is not the one which we seek to develop through meditation.
4) State the three resolutions that we should make after understanding the nine reasons for the three principles.
a)
b)

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	Institute
) (T TTT

e)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Seven
1) Explain the role of the extraordinary training of an ethical way of life in the development of the other two extraordinary trainings, especially as explained by Je Tsongkapa in his <i>Epistle on Ethics</i> .
2) Describe the motivation with which one should engage in a study of Buddhist discipline.
3) In the opening lines of his text, Je Tsongkapa mentions that the vows of individual freedom constitute the subject matter of the scriptures on Buddhist discipline. Explain why these vows are given this name. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
4) Name the five rules, and one additional part, of the lifetime layperson's vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
	3/3/11

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Eight
1) Name the two "consistent" consequences for each of the ten non-virtues, following the <i>Sutra on the Ten Levels</i> and similar works.
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

entire l from th	ling a proper relationship with one's Lama is considered the foundation of the Buddhist path. Name and describe briefly the ten qualities of a qualified Lama, ne classic source—the <i>Ornament of the Sutras</i> . (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and be in English.)
((1)
1	(2)
((3)
((4)
1	(5)
((6)
	(7)
((8)
((9)
((10)



COURSE XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Nine

1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

2) Name and describe the first five metaphors used to describe the benefits of the wish for enlightenment.

- a)
- b)
- c)
- d)
- e)

3) Explain why nothing less then this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.

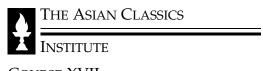
Course XVII, Class Nine, Quiz, cont.
4) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute
000	mon VVIII

COURSE XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Ten
1) Give the short version of the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
3) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?
4) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?
5) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)



COURSE XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Final Examination
1) Explain the three meanings of the word "diamond" in the title of the <i>Diamond-Cutter Sutra</i> .
a)
b)
c)
2) Why is it important to include the original word "cutter" in the title?
3) Describe the object we deny when we speak of "emptiness." (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word for "object we deny.")

Tibeta	iii.)
	name:
	a)
	b)
	c)
	d)
5) Giv	ve at least two actual examples of the four objects listed in the last question.
5) Giv	ve at least two actual examples of the four objects listed in the last question. a)
5) Giv	
5) Giv	
5) Giv	a)
5) Giv	a) b)
5) Giv	a)
5) Giv	a) b)
5) Giv	a) b)

4) Give the name of the state of mind following the direct perception of emptiness at the path of seeing, and list the four objects understood at this point. (Tibetan track in

6) Did the Buddha, in his former life, feel pain as his limbs were slowly cut off by the king of Kalingka, and he understood the emptiness of the three elements? Explain in some detail.
7) Why do things change, and why do some things in our world cause other things? (For example, why does medicine always work; or why are some investment strategies always successful?)
8) Give the short definition of bodhichitta taught by Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
9) Describe Je Tsongkapa's reaction to the idea that practitioners of the secret way do not need to follow the other two sets of vows.

10) Describe the kind of person you must be to break one of the rules of body and speech out of compassion, in certain very extraordinary circumstances.
11) Explain what the Protector, Maitreya, advises we should do if we find that some Buddhist teaching doesn't suit us for now.
12) Name the four white deeds, and for each explain the black deed for which it acts as an antidote. (Tibetan track name white deeds in Tibetan and explain the black deeds in English.) a)
b)
c)
d)

13) Name the four typical causes why a person might break their bodhisattva vows (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
14) According to the highest school of Buddhism, what ultimately causes each of the different realms and types of birth?
15) Name and describe briefly the six kinds of suffering that we must undergo. (Tibetar
track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

16) What is the length of time that a person must accumulate the collections of merit and wisdom to become a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan, from the root text.)
17) Describe the awareness of death which is not the one which we seek to develop through meditation.
18) Explain the role of the extraordinary training of an ethical way of life in the development of the other two extraordinary trainings, especially as explained by Je Tsongkapa in his <i>Epistle on Ethics</i> .
19) Describe the motivation with which one should engage in a study of Buddhist discipline.
20) In the opening lines of his text, Je Tsongkapa mentions that the vows of individual freedom constitute the subject matter of the scriptures on Buddhist discipline. Explain why these vows are given this name. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

21) Name the five rules, and one additional part, of the lifetime layperson's vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
additional part:
22) Name the two "consistent" consequences for each of the ten non-virtues, following the <i>Sutra on the Ten Levels</i> and similar works.
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

23) Finding a proper relationship with one's Lama is considered the foundation of the entire Buddhist path. Name and describe briefly the ten qualities of a qualified Lama, from the classic source—the <i>Ornament of the Sutras</i> . (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)
24) Explain why nothing less than the precious wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta)

25) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.
26) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?
27) Give the short version of the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
28) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

29) Why is it a mispercep		nat the continu	ued existence	of the mental afflicti	ons depends on
30) Does the	e perfection o	f giving depe	end on its exte	ernal perfection? W	hy or why not?
	the reasonin six in Tibeta	0	ordering of	the six perfections.	(Tibetan track

	•	•		would like it to a should be sent.	ppear on your
Please circle	one or specify	other:			
Mr.	Ms.	Mrs.	Miss	Venerable	
Name as you	would like it to	appear on the	certificate:		
Mailing name	, if different:_				
Address					
				Zip code	
Country					



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class One

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for the *Diamond-Cutter Sutra*. (Tibetan track give Tibetan in Tibetan; English track give Tibetan in phonetics.)

Sanskrit: Vajra Chedika

Tibetan: Dorje Chupa క్రేజ్ 'న్ఫోక్స్ 'న్స్

dorje chupa

2) Explain the three meanings of the word "diamond" in the title.

The diamond in this sutra is a metaphor for emptiness, in three senses:

- (1) Most importantly, diamond is the closest thing in our physical world to something which is truly ultimate, or the most of anything (in this case, the hardest thing in the universe)—and a person who sees emptiness directly realizes this fact very strongly.
- (2) Diamond is a totally clear physical substance: if there were a diamond wall between ourselves and some object we were looking at, we would not be able to see the diamond; just so, every object around us possesses its own emptiness, but we are unable to see it.
- (3) When a diamond is broken into pieces, every piece is pure, perfect diamond, down to the molecule. Just so, every instance of emptiness is equally the sheer, 100% absence of a self-existent object.
- 3) Why is it important to include the original word "cutter" in the title?

A person who sees emptiness directly strongly realizes the metaphor of the diamond; and just as strongly, they realize that diamond is only a metaphor—it is only a "lesser" kind of ultimate, whereas the *real* ultimate is emptiness. That is, diamond is the closest object to emptiness in our normal reality, and it is—in actuality—not very close at all to being as ultimate as emptiness. In this sense, the diamond is "cut" or outdone by emptiness, and it is *very important* to retain the word "cutter" in the title, and not refer to the sutra as the "Diamond Sutra."

4) Describe the object we deny when we speak of "emptiness." (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word for "object we deny.")

The word "emptiness" refers to the absence of something that—like a two-headed purple elephant that was 100 feet tall here rampaging through this room—could never exist anyway. We call this thing the "object we deny." It refers to anything that *did not* exist by virtue of our perceptions as forced upon us by our past deeds (karma). And this thing could never exist.



- 5) Name the four bodies of a Buddha, and describe each one briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The Essence Body: The emptiness of the other three "bodies" (or more properly "parts") of an enlightened being; this "body" is very important, since it provides the *potential* for the enlightened beings to perceive themselves as enlightened beings: the "movie screen" on which they project their perception of being an enlightened being.



b) The Enjoyment Body: The perfect physical body which an enlightened being has in their own paradise, exquisite sheer light with no gross physical organs.



c) The Emanation Body: The physical forms which an enlightened being sends—automatically, without any conscious thought to do so—into suffering worlds, appearing to us in any way (as a living being or an inanimate object) which may be of benefit to us. The "classic" Emanation Body is a physical form such as that which Shakyamuni Buddha displayed on our planet.



d) The Wisdom Body: The omniscient mind of an enlightened being, which can perceive all things of all times—past, present, and future—in the universe, and both normal reality and ultimate reality, in every single moment.



- 6) Name the three elements of the act of giving, and what it means "not to see" them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The emptiness of the giver: The fact that the person who is practicing the perfection of giving, I myself, am empty of any self-existence. That is, I exist as I do in the present situation through the perceptions forced upon me by my past actions or karma, and this same principle means that continued giving can help me perceive myself later as an enlightened being. If I understand this, then I "don't see" this element in an act of giving as being self-existent any more.



b) The emptiness of the person receiving the gift: The fact that the person receiving the gift is empty of any self-existence. That is, the person towards whom I am performing the act of giving also exists as they do through the perceptions forced upon me by my past actions, and this principle will help me perceive them later as high beings in my Buddha paradise. If I understand this, then I "don't see" this second element in an act of giving as being self-existent.

c) The emptiness of the giving itself: The fact that this whole situation, of me giving something, is also empty of any self-existence. That is, this entire situation in general exists as it does through the perceptions forced upon me by my past actions, and this principle will help me perceive it later as the perfect and spontaneous activity of an enlightened being. If I understand this, then I "don't see" this third element in an act of giving as being self-existent.



Please note that some commentaries replace different ones of the above with the emptiness of the thing being given, or the gift (*jinja*). That is, the thing I am giving exists as it does through the perceptions forced upon me by my past actions, and this principle will help me perceive the perfect objects in my Buddha paradise later. If I understand this, then I "don't see" this element in an act of giving as being self-existent.





Course XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Two

1) Name and describe the principle most important in reaching an intellectual understanding of emptiness at the path of preparation. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, explain in English.)

This is the principle of "quality and characteristic" (chi jedrak), which is more generally translated as "general and specific." In general there are four types of generals, three of which are especially relevant here. These are "type generals" (rikchi), "actual object generals" (dunchi), and "term generals" (drachi).

An example of a "type general" would be "car," which is a quality (chi) characteristic of (jedrak) a Chevrolet. An example of an "actual object general" would be your mental image of a person whom you had actually met before. An example of a "term general" would be your mental imagination of a person whom you had heard someone talk about, but had never actually met.

The fourth type of general is a "collection general," which refers to the whole composed of its parts. An example here would be a person's body composed of a head, legs, arms, and torso.







dunchi



drachi

2) Give the name of the state of mind following the direct perception of emptiness at the path of seeing, and list the four objects understood at this point. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan.)

name: The state of mind following the direct perception of emptiness on the path of seeing is known as "subsequent wisdom"

jetop yeshe

a) For the first time, one perfectly understands that all life is suffering: this is the arya truth of suffering.

dukngel denpa

b) One perfectly understands that this suffering has come through ignorance (especially in the form of the misperception of reality), the bad thoughts that it creates, and the karma inspired by them both. This is the arya truth of the origin of suffering.

kunjung denpa

c) One sees directly that it is possible to end this suffering: this is the arya truth of cessation.



gokden

d) One sees how to reach the end of suffering, especially by use of the direct perception of emptiness; this is called the arya truth of the path



lamden

3) Give at least two actual examples of the four objects listed in question two.

Two or more of the choices are listed after each letter:

- a) One perceives truly the fact that he or she is impermanent and must die. For about a day, one can read other people's minds and see directly the mental afflictions in them.
- b) One understands that he or she has never had a correct perception at all in any moment of his or her life so far. One understands that all of his or her actions are actually only selfish and self-serving: even religious studies, and rituals, and offerings, are constantly infected by self-interest, desire, and pride.
- c) One understands that the emptiness which he perceived directly was the essence body of the Buddha. One knows how many lifetimes it will be (for example, seven more) before his enlightenment. One realizes that he will not be called by his "name" at that time. One understands that representations of the Buddha and tantric deities such as paintings and statues have actually come eventually from someone who actually saw them.
- d) One understands perfectly that his perception was accurate and correct, not a delusion or hallucination. One has an almost physical sensation of bodhichitta, a love spreading out to the world from one's heart, and an intention to help the world. One for a time loses all desire for worldly objects such as food, understands that miracles like turning iron to gold are possible, and realizes that the contents of the scripture are all perfectly correct: that the Dharma is the absolutely correct way. One understands the meaning of the diamond. One understands truly the need to prostrate oneself.
- 4) Did the Buddha, in his former life, feel pain as his limbs were slowly cut off by the king of Kalingka, and he understood the emptiness of the three elements? Explain in some detail.

He did feel pain, but he realized at that same time that the three elements of the situation (meaning here the king who was hurting him, himself being hurt by the king, and the fact that the whole situation was happening at all) each had its own emptiness, meaning each was a perception being forced upon him by his past deeds, or karma.

5) Why didn't he feel any hatred at that moment?

He didn't feel any hatred because he realized that the reason the situation was happening was that he himself had done harm to someone else in the past; and he understood that—if he did respond with hatred or any other negative action or karma—he would only be perpetuating the situation: that he would again be hurt himself in the future. He chose instead to break the cycle of violence, by applying his wisdom, his understanding of emptiness.

6) Why do things change, and why do some things in our world cause other things? (For example, why does medicine always work; or why are some investment strategies always successful?)

Despite the fact that things are empty; no, because of the fact that things are empty, things work. Because for example medicine is empty, and has no inherent nature of being able to cure anything at all, aspirin works for some people and doesn't work for others, depending on their own past deeds or karma. And it's obvious that we can't say that risky investment strategies are more successful than conservative ones, or vice versa: either one is successful for a person who has made good karmic imprints on their mind in the past, and either one is unsuccessful for a person who has not.

7) Explain why the viewpoint expressed by Hwashang and others, that morality is unnecessary because things are empty, is totally mistaken.

All objects in the world are like empty screens; what we see on them is totally a projection caused by the imprints in our own minds, placed there when we did something either good or bad in the past. Therefore—because things are empty—we must be good and moral in our personal lives, if we want to be forced by our karma to see the world as a tantric paradise in the future.



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Three

1) Name the principal commentary that we will be using for our study of the vows of the bodhisattva; give the author's full name and dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The Highway for Bodhisattvas, by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa, 1357-1419.

चिर-क्रिय-यालुर-त्यमा

jangchub shunglam

£.8</br>

je tsongkapa

2) Give the short definition of bodhichitta taught by Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The wish to become fully enlightened for the sake of all sentient beings.

स्त्र प्रमास्याक्षेत्र प्रमालकः त्र्वा कर्ते । स्रमानका स्वापन स्व

semkye pa ni shendun chir yangdak dzokpay jangchub du

3) Describe Je Tsongkapa's reaction to the idea that practitioners of the secret way do not need to follow the other two sets of vows.

Je Tsongkapa says that this wrong idea "cuts the roots of the Buddha's teaching, and is like a great rain of hail that destroys the tender crops of the happiness of all living kind; it reflects a total failure to grasp both the higher and lower teachings, an absolute misconception that should be thrown away like so much garbage."

4) Describe the kind of person who can grant the vows of a bodhisattva.

It is preferable, but not necessary, that the person who grants you the bodhisattva vows be ordained; and it is also preferable if they are someone who can give you your tantric vows. They can be either male or female. They should be someone who keeps their vows well; they should have the bodhisattva intention; know the ceremony; be a master of bodhisattva teachings; and be able and willing to bring up the student. They should also not have attachment in the sense of not being satisfied with what they have; they should have respect for their vows; not be easily upset or angered, or hold anger; not be lazy in the sense of having no joy in doing virtue; not have a mind that wanders and cannot meditate well; and not be stupid in the sense of putting down the Mahayana.

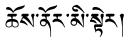
5) Describe the kind of person who can take the vows of the bodhisattva.

The kind of person who can take the bodisattva vows is someone who really wishes to take them; who has a compassionate nature; who knows the vows; intends to keep them; and is based in morality (avoids the ten non-virtues well).

- 6) List the first nine root downfalls of the bodhisattva vows, using the short verse forms. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - (1) The root downfall of praising yourself, or criticizing others.

dak-tu shen-mu

(2) The root downfall of failing to give the Dharma, or material assistance.



chu nor mi-ter

(3) The root downfall of failing to accept someone's apology (or suggestion), or striking another.



shak kyang mi-nyen

(4) The root downfall of giving up the greater way, or teaching false Dharma.

tekchen pongwa

(5) The root downfall of stealing what belongs to the Three Jewels.

kunchok kortrok

(6) The root downfall of giving up the highest Dharma.



chupong

(7) The root downfall of taking away someone's robes and the rest, and removing someone from the status of an ordained person.

ngurmik trok

(8) The root downfall of committing one of the five immediate misdeeds.

tsam me nga

(9) The root downfall of holding wrong views.



lokta

- 7) List the 10th through the 18th root downfalls of the bodhisattva vows, using the short verse forms. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - (10) The root downfall of destroying towns and such.

drong sok jom

(11) The root downfall of teaching emptiness to a person who is not yet mentally prepared.

majang tongnyi ten

(12) The root downfall of causing a person to turn back from total enlightenment.

dzok jang dok

(13) The root downfall of causing a person to give up the morality of freedom.



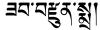
sotar pong

(14) The root downfall of holding that a person cannot eliminate desire and the rest by following the way of the learner.



nyenmu

(15) The root downfall of professing the complete opposite (that is, of saying that you have seen emptiness or deities and the like directly, when you have not).



sabdzunma

(16) The root downfall of accepting what belongs to the Three Jewels when someone presents it to you.



choksum kor len

(17) The root downfall of rejecting the practice of quietude and giving the possessions of meditators to those who practice recitation.

trim ngak cha

(18) The root downfall of discarding the wish for enlightenment.



semtong

8) Describe the result which is required for the 11th root downfall to occur.

As a result of your presentation of the concept of emptiness, a person who had already entered the greater way (the mahayana) becomes frightened or disturbed; they give up the teachings of the greater way, and enter the lower way (the hinayana).

9) Describe how the 13th root downfall is committed.

You tell someone who is keeping their freedom vows that keeping these vows is not very important for attaining enlightenment, and that they should rather develop the wish for enlightenment and enter the greater way; the vow is broken when they agree and give up a moral life of following these vows.

10) The 18th root downfall, and one other before it, are particularly serious and occur whether or not the four mental afflictions called the "chains" are all present. Name this other root downfall and describe it briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

This other downfall is the 9th; that is, holding wrong views. There are two classic types of wrong view: believing there is no such thing as good and bad karma, and believing there is no such thing as past and future lives.





Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

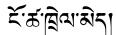
Answer Key, Class Four

- 1) Name the four "chains": the four mental afflictions that bind you, and which must all be present in order for a "major" instance of these afflictions to occur--which destroys one's root vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) You are willing to commit the particular wrong deed again.



chu du malok

b) You do not have any shame or consideration about doing it; that is, you are neither concerned, respectively, about avoiding the wrong deed out of respect for the self-image you have of yourself, nor out of a concern for how you action will affect others.



ngotsa trelme

c) You derive a sense of enjoyment and satisfaction out of doing the wrong deed.



ga-gu

d) You do not consider the deed to be wrong.

केषान्द्रीयाषाः ही प्रसू

nyemik mita

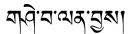
2) Why is it wrong to be overly comforted by the fact that, if you destroy a root vow, you can take it over again?

If you break even one root downfall completely, says Je Tsongkapa, it is impossible for you to see emptiness with bodhichitta—that is, to attain the first bodhisattva level or bhumi—in this life. Whatever collection of virtue you have to see emptiness cannot be increased further, and you lose any ability to create whatever kinds of this merit you have not already attained. It also makes it very difficult for you to meet spiritual teachers in the future.

- 3) Name three different ways that a person can lose his or her bodhisattva vows.
 - a) Holding wrong views.
 - b) Giving up bodhichitta, or the wish to reach enlightenment in order to be of help to every living being; this is the same as formally giving the vows back.
 - c) Breaking a root vow with all four chains present.
- 4) Describe the kind of person you must be to break one of the rules of body and speech out of compassion in certain very extraordinary circumstances.

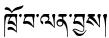
You must be a bodhisattva who is very well versed in the path, having practiced it for many millions of years; who has great compassion; who possesses skilful means; and who sees that there is no other alternative.

- 5) Name the four points of the practice of virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) When someone yells at you, you don't respond in kind, by yelling back.



shewa lenje

b) When someone gets angry at you and puts you down, you don't respond in kind.

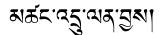


trowa lenje

c) When someone hits you, you don't respond in kind.

dekpa lenje

d) When someone criticizes you and points out your faults, you don't respond in kind.



tsangdru lenje

6) Explain what the Protector, Maitreya, advises we should do if we find that some Buddhist teaching doesn't suit us for now.

If there is some point within the teachings which you cannot understand, or which you have a doubt about right now, then leave it for the time being. Be careful not to decide for sure that it is wrong, or reject it, since this would be serious bad karma; rather, shelve the idea for now and decide you will come back to it later when you get more information or have thought about it longer.

- 7) Name the four white deeds, and for each explain the black deed for which it acts as an antidote. (Tibetan track name white deeds in Tibetan and explain the black deeds in English.)
 - a) Never speak a lie to any living being, even in jest. This is the antidote to intentionally deceiving your Lama, or any other holy beings.



kun la dzun mi-ma

b) Bring other people to strive for the bodhisattva ideal of total enlightenment. This is the antidote for causing a person to regret a virtuous deed they have done.



dzok jang la gu

c) Try to see every person or thing you encounter as being absolutely pure, and conceive of every living being as the Teacher himself. This is the antidote to saying something unpleasant to a bodhisattva out of anger.



d) Maintain an attitude of total honesty, free of any kind of deception, toward every living being. This is the antidote for acting in a devious way with anyone, without a sense of personal responsibility for their enlightenment.



- 8) Describe the five steps involved in keeping the bodhisattva vows well.
 - a) Respect the speech of the Buddha: think of the vows as a gift given to you personally by an enlightened being.
 - b) Maintain the three intentions: intend to follow the vows because an enlightened being gave them to you; intend to become enlightened and reach paradise, and intend to help limitless beings.
 - c) Take the vows based upon the prior two steps.
 - d) Respect the vows as your most precious possession and the most precious thing in this world.
 - e) Since the previous point (d) is true, then avoid breaking your vows.
- 9) Can a person break a secondary vow out of mere forgetfulness, or does the motivation have to be one of the mental afflictions?

You can break them either way.

- 10) Name the four typical causes why a person might break their bodhisattva vows. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) You don't know the vows in the first place.

mi-shepa

b) You know the vow but your are careless, lazy, or forgetful in trying to keep them.

bakmepa

c) You know the vows, but you have an attack of bad thoughts and break them because you can't help yourself.

nyunmong mangwa

d) You disregard the vows; you disrespect the vows and Lord Buddha.

ma-gupa

- 11) Name the four antidotes for these four causes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Become a master of the vows.

tungwa la kepa

b) Be mindful and catch yourself if you start to slip.

drenshe ten

c) Identify your worst mental affliction and work on it.

nyun she cheway nyenpo

d) Feel respect for the vows, based upon the results you get from keeping them.



gupa



Course XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Five

1) Give the name of the principal text we will be using for our study of the realms of existence, along with the name of its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan and Sanskrit.)

The principal text for our study of the realms of existence will be the third chapter of the *Treasure House of Higher Knowledge* (Abhidharmakosha, written by Master Vasubandhu about 350 AD.

chu ngunpa dzu

lopun yiknyen

2) Explain how the desire realm can be divided into twenty different parts. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The division of the desire realm into twenty parts is done as follows:

a) eight hot hells

tsa-nyel gye

b) craving spirits

yidak

c) animals

d) humans of the four continents

e) six types of pleasure beings of the desire realm

3) What is the nature of the "desire" in the expression "desire realm"?

The "desire" in the expression "desire realm" refers to craving aimed at getting sex or food.

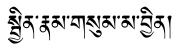
4) According to the highest school of Buddhism, what ultimately causes each of the different realms and types of birth?

According to the highest school of Buddhism, the "Consequence" section of the "Middle-Way" school (Madhyamika Prasangika), the realms and each of the kinds of beings in them are—like all other objects—the result of a projection forced upon an otherwise blank screen by our past karma. Thus it is perfectly acceptable to assert that Master Vasubandhu is describing actual life forms and realms that we ourselves could, if the karma demanded it, experience after our death from this present life.

- 5) Name the one general cause, and then the three specific causes that can lead us to a birth as a craving spirit. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The one general cause is performing the ten bad deeds to a medium degree of seriousness

mige chu dring

b) The first specific cause for birth as a craving spirit is a failure to perform the three kinds of giving. The three kinds of giving are giving material things, giving freedom from fear, and giving the Dharma.



jin nam sum majin

c) A second specific cause is possessiveness or cheapness.

d) A third specific cause is jealousy.



- 6) Name one general cause, and then two specific causes, for birth as an animal.
 - a) A general cause for birth as an animal is performing the ten bad deeds to a less serious extent.
 - b) The first more specific cause would be breaking minor rules of morality on a regular basis.
 - c) The second more specific cause would be committing a great number of wrong deeds such as failing to respect those who are worthy of respect.
- 7) Name and describe briefly the six kinds of suffering that we must undergo. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - a) The first suffering is the fact that life has no certainty: because the events of our life are determined by our past karma and our mental afflictions, there is no certainty that your friend will not become your enemy, or your father your son, or any other possibility.

देश'सेरा

ngeme

b) The second suffering is that we can never find any sense of satisfaction. No matter how much we get of something, we cannot feel any contentment. In fact, the normal reaction to pleasure is that—rather than satisfying us—it creates a desire for even more of the object, thus giving us more pain.



ngom mishe

c) The third suffering is the fact that we have to shed our bodies, over and over again. The point is that, "regardless of all the bad deeds we might accumulate in order to maintain this body we have now, it is an absolute certainty that—in the end—we will be forced to shed it. The power of the wrong deeds we did for the sake of the body though we carry along in our mind, and they bring to us the eventual result of unbearable pain."

yang yang lundor

d) The fourth suffering is the fact that we have to take birth, over and over again. If we tried to count our past lives by using pinches of dirt to represent each one, this planet itself would be used up before we finished.

yang yang nyingtsam jor

e) The fifth suffering is the fact that we have to go from a high position to a low position, over and over again. "The point here is that any good thing that ever happens here in the circle of suffering life eventually turns into some kind of problem."

yang yang tomen gyur

f) The sixth suffering is the fact that we have no companion. We not only lose our other friends, but even the body which is our most intimate companion. "We tend to collect a great variety of different bad deeds for the sake of our friends. But when the time comes to experience the consequences of these actions, none of these same friends can participate in our pain at all. And in those situations where we try to practice some Dharma, these friends tend to hold us back. So what use are they, anyway?"



drokme

- 8) The existence of intermediate beings is also proven by statements of the Buddha. Describe the three conditions under which, according to the Buddha, a child will form in the mother's womb. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)
 - a) The presence of a being who is suitable to be a mother, and who is still menstruating.

marung datsen den

b) A feeling of desire, and then sexual contact, between the prospective parents.

pa ma chak tre

c) The proximity of "one of the beings who lives on smells"; that is, an intermediate being.

drisa nyerne

9) How does an intermediate being enter the state of a human womb birth?

If the person is to be born a human, he or she sees his parents from a distance, having sex together. Because of a mistaken impression, and imagining that he can play and enjoy himself, he passes to his destination within the womb, lodged in the midst of the mother's abdomen and entrails.



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Six

- 1) Name the four different kinds of sustenance, and give examples of each. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan, and explain in English.)
 - a) Solid food, such as the food we eat.

kamse

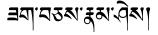
b) Stained contact, such as contact of the object, power, and consciousness that involve an experience of pleasure.

sakche rekpa

c) Stained movement of the mind, such as that consisting of hope that one is about to be fed when close to starvation.

sakche sempa

d) Stained consciousness, such as the consciousness linked with the contact involved in an experience of pleasure.



sakche namshe

2) What is the function of these types of sustenance?

They function to perpetuate this suffering life. As sutra states, "The four types of sustenance are the very root of sickness, cancer, agony. They help bring about old age and death."

- 3) Name and describe the eight hot hells. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, describe in English.)
 - a) "No Respite." The hell is known as "No Respite" because the beings living there experience unlimited sufferings without the slightest interruption.

narme

b) "Revive." So called because the beings living here strike each other with various weapons until they all lie still as death. Then a voice comes from the sky, commanding them to "Revive!" This makes them rise and start all over again.



c) "Lines of Black." In this hell, the hellguards first cover beings' bodies with black lines and then use various kinds of blades to slice them open along these lines.

tiknak

d) "Gather and Smash." The hellguards gather the beings here together and smash them to a pulp.



e) "Screaming." This hell is named from the shrieks of pain by the beings there, seared by heat.

ngumbu

f) "Great Screaming Hell." The heat that burns those living there is much greater, their screams of pain more horrible too.

ngumbu chenpo

g) "Heat." This hell is named from the fact that its inhabitants burn stuffed in red-hot iron chambers.



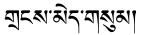
tsawa

h) "Superheat." The beings here roast in an even more unbearable heat, jammed in ceramic chambers of single or double walls.

raptu tsawa

4) What is the length of time that a person must accumulate the collections of merit and wisdom to become a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan, from the root text.)

A Buddha occurs from the act of accumulating merit and wisdom for a period of three "countless" numbers of these great eons. "Countless" refers to the number 10 followed by 59 zeroes.



drangme sum

5) Describe the periods during which Buddhas appear in the world.

Buddhas never appear while the average lifespan is rising, for during this period beings feel less disgust with the circle of life. Rather, they come during the time that starts when lifespans drop from eighty thousand years, and which continues as they go down, until a hundred years is reached. Buddhas do not appear subsequent to this period, as lifespans are decreasing even further. Since the five degenerations have spread fairly widely by this time, beings then are no fit vessels to receive the teachings.

- 6) Name the four steps in the contemplation of death. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Considering the problems of not meditating on death.

chiwa madrenpay nyemik

b) Considering the benefits of meditating on death.

chidren penyun

c) Identifying just what kind of death awareness we seek to develop.

chidren jita kye

d) How to meditate and develop this awareness of death.



chidren gomtsul

7) Describe the awareness of death which is not the one which we seek to develop through meditation.

"There is a kind of terror that a person can feel when he or she fears that they are about to be torn away from their loved ones and such. This fear stems from a very strong attachment for those around you, and is the natural fear of a person who has never attempted any kind of practice of the path. As such, it is *not* the awareness of death that we are talking about having to develop here."

8) Describe the awareness of death which is the one which we seek to develop through meditation.

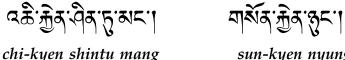
"There is not a single being who has taken on a body like ours—one created by the force of our past deeds and mental afflictions—who is exempt from the absolute certainty of death. It is true that, in the short run, trying to develop some fear about this fact might not enable you to stop it. Nonetheless you really must try to develop some fear that you might die before you have been able to achieve your goals for your future life: that you might die before you have managed to put an end to anything that might cause you to be born in one of the lower realms, or before you have achieved all those things that would lead you to the higher realms, and to ultimate good."

"If you had this kind of fear, over these kinds of things, then it would help you to do something about them, and at the moment of death itself you would have no reason to be afraid. If on the other hand you find yourself unable to achieve these goals, then when death comes you will be tormented by regret, of two different kinds. In a general sense, you will realize that you were unable to free yourself from the circle of suffering life. More specifically, you will begin to feel sheer terror over the possibility of having to drop into the realms of misery."

- 9) Name the three reasons behind the second principle of death meditation: contemplating that there is no certainty when we will die. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Here on the continent of Dzambu, lifetimes are anything but fixed.

dzamling tse la ngeme

b) The things that can kill you are very, very many; whereas the things that can keep you alive are very few.



sun-kyen nyung

c) Our bodies are extremely fragile.



- 10) State the three resolutions that we should make after understanding the nine reasons for the three principles.
 - a) Knowing that we shall have to die, we must resolve to begin our practice.
 - b) Knowing that we could die any time, we must quit our worldly work immediately and start our practice today.
 - c) And finally, since nothing else can help us, we must devote ourselves to our practice only. A man who is hiking many miles doesn't fill up his pack with a lot of junk that he won't be needing.



Course XVII
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Seven

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan words for Buddhist discipline, and explain the literal meaning of the term. (Tibetan track answer all in Tibetan.)

The Sanskrit word for "Buddhist discipline" is *vinaya*, and the Tibetan word is *dulwa*. The word means "to tame," or "to discipline," or "to control." As Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra points out, "The collection of scripture known as 'Buddhist discipline' (*vinaya*) is so called because we use what it treats as its subject matter—that is, the ethical behavior of abandoning the seven bad deeds, along with their group—to *tame* the mental afflictions, as well as to *control* the senses.

दर्याना

dulwa

यर्यायदेश्चेश्चेर्णीयह्रित्तिः श्चेर्यायर हीर्यायर यर्याया हिससामी स्वेर

dulway denu kyi juja pongdun korche kyi tsultrim kyi nyonmongpa dul shing wangpo dulwar jepe na dulwa

2) Describe the relationship between Buddhist discipline, and Lord Buddha and his teachings.

It is stated that, from the point of view of subject matter, the collection of scripture on Buddhist discipline constitutes the highest teachings of the Buddha, for two reasons. In essence these teachings are sufficient to represent the entire instructions of the Buddha. And because they illuminate the rules of ethical behavior, these teachings can also act as a substitute for the Buddha himself.

वर्वायावे क्रेंबर्ट्यम्बर्यार्ट्शाधीता

dulwa ni tun dang tenpa ngu yin

3) Explain the role of the extraordinary training of an ethical way of life in the development of the other two extraordinary trainings, especially as explained by Je Tsongkapa in his *Epistle on Ethics*.

In his *Epistle*, Je Tsongkapa mentions that even in his time very few people recognized the fact that the extraordinary training in meditative concentration had to precede the extraordinary training in wisdom: a person cannot perceive emptiness directly without reaching a high level of meditative concentration. Then he states that by his time as well, the fact that the extraordinary training in an ethical way of life is a prerequisite for the training in concentration had already been forgotten. He states that a clean and undisturbed state of mind is produced by an ethical life style, and is as necessary to see emptiness as a clear and undisturbed pond is in order for a reflection of the moon to appear in it distinctly.

4) Name the early Sanskrit commentary which forms the basis for the study of Buddhist discipline in Tibetan monasteries; give also the author, and his approximate date. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The Sutra on Discipline (Vinaya Sutra); written by Master Guna Prabha roughly around 500 AD.

तर्वाःचर्वःसर्

lopun yunten-u

5) Describe the motivation with which one should engage in a study of Buddhist discipline.

Je Tsongkapa says in his *Epistle on Ethics*: "If keeping up this ethical way of life becomes for us something motivated only by a concern about how we look to others, or about the honor and gifts we might obtain thereby, then the real point of ethics is lost." We must maintain an ethical way of life out of a feeling of renunciation: a true desire to escape our present suffering condition known as *samsara*—the fact of our defective and suffering body and mind.

6) In the opening lines of his text, Je Tsongkapa mentions that the vows of individual freedom constitute the subject matter of the scriptures on Buddhist discipline. Explain why these vows are given this name. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

As Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra explains in his commentary to Je Tsongkapa's work, "These vows are given the name 'individual freedom' for the reason that those who take and keep them properly gain freedom from the cycle of suffering, whereas those who act in the opposite way fail to gain this freedom."

dompa langne tsulshin sungken nam korwa le tar ching, de le dokpa nam mitarway gyutsen gyi sosor tarpay dompa she

7) Name the six categories by which Je Tsongkapa explains the vows of individual freedom. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The six categories are: the vows' basic nature, the way they are divided into eight types, their individual descriptions, who can take them, how they are lost, and the benefits they give when you keep them properly.

8) Give a general description of the vows of individual freedom by quoting directly the relevant two and a half lines of Je Tsongkapa's root text.

It is a turning away from harming others, And its basis, caused by an attitude Of renunciation. 9) Name the five rules, and one additional part, of the lifetime layperson's vow. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The five rules are:

a) Not killing a human or human fetus;

b) Not stealing anything worth more than a quarter karshapana;

karshapanay shichay tse kyi rintang tsang kuwa

c) Not lying about your spiritual life;

mi chu lamay dzun mawa

d) Not committing adultery; and

rang gi bume mayinpa la lokpar yempa

e) Not taking intoxicants.

nyugyur gyi kuwa chang tungwa dang

The additional part is agreeing never to act against the advices on going for refuge.

kyamdroy labjay mitunchok nam pongwa



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Eight

- 1) Name five things which can cause any of the vows of individual freedom to be lost. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Giving back your vows formally

lappa pul

b) Dying and transmigrating

shi pu

c) Having both sexual organs appear on your body

tsennyi jung

d) Changing your sex three times

len sum gyur

e) Losing your core of virtue

ge-tsa che

- 2) Describe the two results of keeping these vows. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) You attain rebirth as a human or pleasure being

ne kap drebu hla mi

b) You attain one of the three "enlightenments"

jangchub sum

- 3) Name the two "consistent" consequences for each of the ten non-virtues, following the *Sutra on the Ten Levels* and similar works.
 - (1) Your life is short, and you get sick easily.
 - (2) You don't have enough to live on, and what you do have is all just common property with others.
 - (3) The people who work around you are "inconsistent," which here means unreliable, and you find yourself having a lot of competition for your partner.
 - (4) No one believes what you say, even when you are speaking the truth, and others are always deceiving you.
 - (5) The people around you are always fighting against one another, and have an undesirable character.
 - (6) You hear many unpleasant things, and when others talk to you it always seems to you as if they want to start a fight.
 - (7) No one respects what you say—no one thinks that what you say has any particular value, and you are afflicted with a lack of confidence.
 - (8) Your personality is dominated by desire, and you are never satisfied with what you have.

- (9) You are always finding yourself without help, or never find the help you need; and you are always hurting others, or always being hurt by others.
- (10) You become a person who keeps harmful views, or a deceitful person.
- 4) Describe the "environmental" consequence of performing each of the ten.

The following answers are taken directly from the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path,* by Je Tsongkapa:

- (1) The consequence of killing expresses itself in the outer world around you. Food, drink, medicine, the crops in the fields, and other such things have very little power; they are always inferior; they have little nutrition or potency; they are hard to digest, and they cause disease in you. Because of this the majority of the living beings around you die before reaching the end of a full life.
- (2) Because you have stolen, then the crops are few and far between; the crops have no power to remove hunger; they spoil; they never come up; dry spells stay on too long; it rains too much; the crops dry up, or die off.
- (3) Because you have done wrong sex, you live in a place where there is urine and feces all around, and mud and dirt and filth, and everything stinks, and everywhere seems unpleasant and distasteful.
- (4) Because you have lied, you live in a world where, when you undertake farming or some work in cooperation with other people, in the end the work fails to prosper, and the people can't work well together, and for the most part everyone is cheating one another, and is afraid, and where there are many things to be afraid of.
- (5) Because you have split people up with your talk, the very ground in the place you live is all uneven, covered with crags and gullies, full of highs and lows, so that you can travel only with difficulty, and where you are always afraid, and there are many things to be afraid of.

- (6) Because you have spoken harsh words, the ground where you live is covered with obstacles like the trunks of fallen trees, and thorns, and stones, and clods of dirt, and lots of sharp broken pieces of glass; it's rough, and dreary; no streams, or lakes, or springs of water; the whole earth is parched, poisoned with salt and borax, burning hot, useless, threatening; a place where there are many things to fear.
- (7) Because you have talked meaninglessly, fruits refuse to grow on the trees, or they start to grow at the wrong times, never at the right times, and seem ripe when they're still not ripe, or their roots are frail, or they can't stay long; there are no places to take your leisure, no parks, no glades, no pools of cool water, and many things around to make you afraid.
- (8) Because you have coveted what others have, then each and every good thing you ever manage to find starts to get worse and worse, less and less with the passing of each of the four season, and in every month, and even day by day.
- (9) Because you have wished bad things on others, you live in a world of chaos, where diseases spread, and evil is everywhere, and plague, and conflict, and fear from the armies of other nations; where there are many lions or leopards or other dangerous animals; where there are everywhere venomous snakes or scorpions or poison biting worms; surrounded by harmful spirits, and thieves or muggers, and the like.
- (10) Because you have held wrong views, then you live in a world where the single highest source of happiness is steadily disappearing from the earth; a world where people think that things that are unclean and things that are suffering are actually nice, and happy; a world where there is no place to go, no one to help, nothing to protect you.

- 5) Name and explain briefly the four special qualities of the teachings on the steps to enlightenment. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - a) You realize that, insofar as they are all direct or indirect factors in reaching enlightenment, absolutely all of the Buddha's teachings are free of any inconsistency at all.

tenpa gelme

b) All of the high speech of the Buddhas strikes you as personal advice.

sung-rab dampar char

c) You will easily grasp the true intent of the victorious Buddhas; that is, how each and every teaching they give is directed at our reaching Enlightenment, and how nothing they say is ever not so directed.

gyel gong delak nye

d) You will be protected from the Great Mistake of rejecting any of the Buddhist teachings, because of this realization that they all contribute to one's reaching Enlightenment.



nyechu chenpoy yang sa le sung

- 6) Finding a proper relationship with one's Lama is considered the foundation of the entire Buddhist path. Name and describe briefly the ten qualities of a qualified Lama, from the classic source—the *Ornament of the Sutras*. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - (1) "Controlled," in the sense of possessing the training of living an ethical life.

(2) "Peaceful," in the sense of possessing the training of concentration.

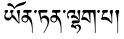


shiwa

(3) "Completely peaceful," in the sense of possessing the training of wisdom.

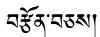
nyer shiwa

(4) "With exceeding qualities," in the sense of possessing spiritual qualities which are much greater than those of the prospective disciple.



yunten hlakpa

(5)"Having effort," in the sense of dedicating great effort to achieving the two ultimate goals of oneself and others.



tsunche

(6) "Rich in scripture," in the sense of having studied deeply the three collections of scripture.

(7) "With a deep realization of suchness," in the sense of having realized emptiness.

denyi rabtu tokpa

(8) "A master teacher," in the sense of teaching exactly in accordance with the disciple's capacity, and as slowly as necessary.



ma-keden

(9) "The image of love," in the sense of teaching out of a motivation of love for the disciple, rather than out of a desire for material gain, respect, or fame.

tseway daknyi

(10) "Overcome all distaste," in the sense of never tiring to teach over and over again until the disciple understands.



kyowa pang

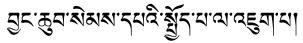


Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

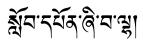
Answer Key, Class Nine

1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life by Master Shantideva, from about 700 AD



jangchub sempay chupa la jukpa



lopun shiwa hla

2) Describe briefly the event in Master Shantideva's life which taught the monks of Nalendra Monastery that they should never judge a person from his or her outward appearance. (Tibetan track also give in Tibetan the name which was given to this master by certain misguided people.)

Because he chose not to reveal his extraordinary spiritual qualities outwardly, Master Shantideva was given the derogatory name "Mister Three Thoughts," implying that he was only interested in eating, sleeping, and defecating. In an attempt to induce him to leave the monastery, certain other monks attempted to embarrass him by asking him to teach publicly. He then recited the *Guide*, displayed miraculous powers, and disappeared into the sky. Later the monks located him, and he granted them explanations of two of his greatest works.



dushe sumpawa

- 3) Name the ten chapters of the Guide. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)
 - (1) Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

(2) Purifying Bad Deeds

(3) Acquiring the Wish for Enlightenment

(4) Using Carefulness

(5) Guarding Awareness

(6) Not Getting Angry

supa tenpa

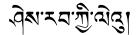
(7) Joyous Effort

tsundru tenpa

(8) Meditative Concentration

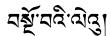
samten tenpa

(9) Wisdom



sherab kyi leu

(10) Dedication



ngoway leu

- 4) Name and describe the first five metaphors used to describe the benefits of the wish for enlightenment.
 - a) The wish is like an alchemical elixir which can change the inferior body we have now into the supreme body of a Buddha.
 - b) The wish is like a precious jewel which is difficult to find and able to clear away the poverty of living kind.
 - c) The wish is like an evergreen tree which doesn't die after bearing fruit a single time, but rather continually grows and gives more fruits.
 - d) The wish is like a great warrior who is able to protect one from great fear, and danger.
 - e) The wish is like the fire which comes at the end of an eon: it is able to burn away all your bad deeds without any difficulty at all.

5) Explain why nothing less then this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.

Because the wish for enlightenment involves a decision to reach enlightenment, the highest state of being that anyone can achieve, for oneself in order to help an unlimited number of other beings, it creates the karma for one's entire future world to be totally pure.

6) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.

The three highest objects are the Buddha Jewel (which refers primarily to the Dharma body, or the emptiness of the bodies of the Buddha); the Dharma Jewel (which refers primarily to the direct perception of emptiness, and the permanent cessation of spiritual obstacles); and the Sangha Jewel (which refers to those who have perceived emptiness directly).

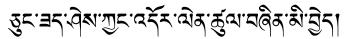
7) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.

By taking refuge in the Three Jewels we are actually re-asserting our belief in the perception of emptiness. This can protect us when we stop reacting to negative events and people, because we realize that these reactions will create karmic imprints which force us in the future to undergo these once again.

- 8) Name three important reasons why we should make great efforts in the practice of purifying ourselves through all four of the forces, together. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) We don't understand the laws of actions and their consequences.

lendre namye la mike

b) We are unable to follow what little we do understand, and constantly collect new and powerful karmic imprints.



chungse she kyang dorlen tsulshin mi je

c) We must remove obstacles to reaching the true wish for enlightenment.

jangsem kyeway gekjong be

9) Name three different levels of virtue in which we can rejoice.

Virtuous deeds by ourselves and others that are going to lead to the higher births, to nirvana alone, and to highest enlightenment.

10) Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.

Jealousy, which is a kind of anger or unhappiness that someone else has attained some kind of happiness or good personal quality. Jealousy is extremely improper for bodhisattvas, who are working so that every living being can have every kind of happiness.

- 11) Name and describe four kinds of dedication, and then describe what it is we are dedicating.
 - a) General dedication

chir ngowa

b) Dedication for the sake of the sick

nepay ngowa

c) Dedication for the sake of removing hunger and thirst

trekom selway ngowa

d) Dedication so that all that everyone's wishes for can come about

र्र्र-रम् वसुर नवे नर्शे न dugu jungway ngowa

What we are dedicating: The virtuous power of all the deeds we have done, from offering up to requesting holy beings not to enter into "nirvana."

12) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?

We are wishing that we ourselves could become enlightened through our virtue, so that we ourselves could become the medicine, cure, and physician for the sick; become food and drink for the needy; become the very things and people that all beings wish for, in a temporary and an ultimate sense.



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Answer Key, Class Ten

- 1) Describe four things that uplift our hearts as we first gain the two forms of the wish. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Our lives have become fruitful

b) We have truly achieved a human life

c) We have been born into the family of the Buddhas

d) We have become a child of the Buddhas

sanggye se su gyur

- 2) Name five ways in which the wish has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) It destroys the Lord of Death within every living being.

droway chidak jompa

b) It destroys poverty (within every living being, same with all the rest).

ulwa jompa

c) It destroys illness.

ne jompa

d) It destroys the general suffering of the cycle of life.

chir sipay dukngel jompa

e) It destroys, more specifically, the sufferings of the lower realms.

kyepar ngendroy dukngel jompa

3) How is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?

A person who has the wish can reach full enlightenment, and once enlightened they are perfectly qualified to teach and help all other sentient beings remove all of their suffering, and thereby to reach their own perfection.

- 4) Name four different steps in the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us.
 - a) Considering how they leave us powerless.
 - b) Considering how they send us to unthinkable suffering.
 - c) Considering how the time that they hurt us is infinite.
 - d) Considering the reasons why it is wrong to make friends with the mental afflictions.
- 5) Give the short version of the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

A mental function which ruins the peace of mind of the person who has it.

semgyu ma-shiwar jepay semjung

- 6) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Liking things ignorantly

duchak

b) Disliking things ignorantly



kongtro

c) Pride

nga-gyel

d) Ignorance

marikpa

e) Doubt

te-tsom

f) Wrong views

tawa

7) What does Gyaltsab Je have to say about the idea that a strong love for the Path, and hatred for your mental afflictions, are mental afflictions themselves?

He says that, because they are elements of the Path itself, the Path which helps you destroy the mental afflictions, they cannot be considered a part of the group of objects which must be eliminated from the mind. He further says that those commentaries which explain that these two attitudes must be eliminated later are only referring to the fact that, once the mental afflictions have been eliminated, these two will no longer function in the fight against the mental afflictions.

8) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?

Because the mental afflictions are rooted in a misperception, they can be eradicated completely, as the misperception is corrected by the eye of wisdom; and then they will never be able to return.

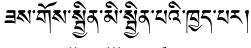
9) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?

It does not depend on its external perfection, because we can see that there are still people in the world who are afflicted by poverty. If removing all beings' poverty were the essence of the perfection of giving, then the enlightened beings of the past can not have perfected giving. Therefore the *perfection* of giving is the perfection of the willingness to give (which is also expressed to the ultimate of one's current ability).

10) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)

Not being concerned with possessions, and not having attatchment to them, is necessary for the perfection of giving and leads naturally into the perfection of ethical living. The perfection of an ethical life includes restraining oneself from negative actions, and this leads naturally into the perfection of patience. The perfection of patience involves the ability to bear great hardships for the Dharma, and this leads naturally into the perfection of joyful effort. The perfection of joyful effort involves making constant efforts night and day, which leads into single-pointed meditation. The perfection of meditation involves reaching a point where the body and mind are well-trained for meditation, which leads to the wisdom which realizes perfectly the true nature of all objects.

- 11) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) When to give and not to give food and clothing



segu jin mijinpay kyepar

b) Advice not to hurt the body in order to achieve minor goals

jawa tren tsek che lu minu

c) Explanation of the proper time and purpose for which to give one's body

त्युक्षः श्रुवि नार्ते दः तुका तदः दर्गोका या

lu jin tong du dang gupa



Course XVII The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two

Tibetan Language Study Guide

Class One



বিশ্বাস্থ্য gakja





Trulku

પો:વેચ:ક્રેચ:ક્ર્યું yeshe chuku

Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two Language Study Guide









Class Two







स्या drachi Course XVII: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part Two Language Study Guide

jetop yeshe

ฐการฐณากริสามา dukngel denpa

गुत्र प्रजुद परित पा kunjung denpa

> दर्गीया परिदा gokden

यमः lamden

Class Three

jangchub shunglam

直话气内切 je tsongkapa

शेश्रश्चार्यक्षेत्रः यात्रः यात्रः वित्रः श्चित्रः।

WE.र्वाः स्वाराः याद्यः वित्रः वित्रः वित्रः।

semkye pa ni shendun chir

yangdak dzokpay jangchub du

यद्या यर्सेद याव वर सेंद्रा

dak-tu shen-mu

केंग वेंर की केरा

chu nor mi-ter

यवयात्राग्रीट.श्रु.भेरी

shak kyang mi-nyen

व्रेया के दः क्षेंदः या

tekchen pongwa

न्ग्रेंब्रः अर्केया न्ग्रेंच्र वर्ध्य

kunchok kortrok

更知.美工.

chupong

2र.श्रीया.उस्य

ngurmik trok

মর্ক্রমম্যরীশৃষ্ট্রা

tsam me nga

र्येग् स्वा lokta

र्गूट संग्रस प्रहेससा drong sok jom

মাস্ত্রুমে স্ট্রমান্ত্রিমান্ত

र्ह्याशः चुटः स्ट्रेया dzok jang dok

sotar pong

35: \$\frac{3}{3}\frac{3}\frac{3}\frac{3}{3}\frac{3}{3}\frac{3}{3}\frac{3}{3}\frac{3}{3}\

sabdzunma

अर्केण'गशुअ'दर्गोर'योदा choksum kor len

Class Four

र्त्रि:च:त्यत्र:नुर्या trowa lenje

परेग्'य'यम्'नुम् dekpa lenje

सर्वदःवर्ज्ञःयमःज्ञा tsangdru lenje

ग्रीय.ता.ह्रय.सा.सी भाषा la dzun mi-ma

gzok jang la gu

र्याः सूरः सूरः या dak nang jorwa

गुरु त्य नार्थे क्यु क्षेत्र kun la yo gyume

> มี:คิพ:บา mi-shepa

বনা'ঐ্ব'্যা bakmepa

वेंबर्जेटशः अटः च

nyunmong mangwa

มากุลานา ma-gupa

स्पात्रस्य la kepa

इब्र-विश्वाचर्द्धेव।

drenshe ten

र्भेतः प्रशः के प्राचे पाने व र्था nyun she cheway nyenpo

> ฎลาน gupa

Class Five

番叭を表すなる。 chu ngunpa dzu

श्चेंच द्वेंब द्वेंग गहेबा

lopun yiknyen

र्च:न्रुव:नर्जुन्।

tsa-nyel gye

ত্ম-বৃদ্যা

yidak

वर्रःस्

dundro

মূন্দ্রন্থী

ling shi mi

वर्रेर सुर्व

du hla druk

श्री-न्यो-न्यु-व्यीद-।

mige chu dring

ब्रुव.स्थायाश्वयायानुन्।

jin nam sum majin

> प्यदः प्यदः हेदः सर्वस्र सः ह्येद। yang yang nyingtsam jor

wang yang tomen gyur

र्ग्रेज्यश्चित्र। drokme

आर्द्र त्रुः श्रक्तं स्वा marung datsen den

> प्रः अः कण्याशः स्त्रा pa ma chak tre

र्दे : ब रे र : या द रा। drisa nyerne

Class Six

RAN' AN I

রবা'বস্তম'নীবা'র' sakche rekpa

sakche sempa

sakche namshe

narme

yangsu

tiknak

dujom

ngumbu

ngumbu chenpo

あっわり tsawa

スロ.L. 変.ロl raptu tsawa

ব্যুহঝ'মীহ'নাঝুমা drangme sum

दक्ते'च'स'5्रद'पदे'न्द्रेस'5्रसेप्रास्। chiwa madrenpay nyemik

> दक्ते:द्रदःखदःख्दा chidren penyun

तके'त्रम्'हे'त्रु'तङ्गेत्। chidren jita kye

तके: इब्र नर्सेस्य स्वा chidren gomtsul

तह्रमञ्जूदार्काः वाद्याः स्थान् । dzamling tse la ngeme

वकें मुन्दिन प्रदा पार्शन मुन्दिन सुदा

chi-kyen shintu mang

sun-kyen nyung

ત્યુચા:વૈત્ર:ह:ह्य:कुटः।

lu shintu nyamchung

Class Seven

dulwa

वर्वानवे के केंद्र ग्री नहेंद नु केंद्र नद्द वर्षेर नठका ग्री कुवा विस्रार ग्रीका केंद्र केंद्र अप्यायत्या निराद्या निराद्या वर्षा त्याय वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा व

dulway denu kyi juja pongdun korche kyi tsultrim kyi nyonmongpa dul shing wangpo dulwar jepe na dulwa

वर्वायाने क्षेत्रप्र पश्च पार्टेश धीता

dulwa ni tun dang tenpa ngu yin

वर्षायवे सर्

dulway do

क्षेत्र दर्भे अधिक कि विदेश

lopun yunten-u

dompa langne tsulshin sungken nam korwa le tar ching, de le dokpa nam mitarway gyutsen gyi sosor tarpay dompa she

มิสมามิราธภาพานากุณีรายๆ mi-am mirchakpa supa

नारः १ पार्रे पित्रे करें करें कर्रा है ने अदः कर प्रमाणि karshapanay shichay tse kyi rintang tsang kuwa

มี. ชังเมามนิ. บรัง ซึ่าบโ mi chu lamay dzun mawa

रदानी तुर्कोर् अप्येद याया विजायर जायेकाया rang gi bume mayinpa la lokpar yempa

श्रीशादवीरावी.वि.य.करादबीरायारीरा

nyugyur gyi kuwa chang tungwa dang

श्रुवरा वर्षेते वस्त्रव विते शेष्य स्त्रव स्त्रव स्त्रव स्त्रव स्त्रव स्त्रव

kyamdroy labjay mitunchok nam pongwa

Class Eight

বশ্বব:ব:র্ঝ

lappa pul

विःस्था

shi pu

মর্কর'বান্ট্রম'রূহ'।

tsennyi jung

অব'বার্থর'য়্রুহ।

len sum gyur

न्योः सः कन्।

ge-tsa che

योष्ट्राः सैयरा येशः ये. के. थ्री

ne kap drebu hla mi

चिर-क्रिय-याशुस्रा

jangchub sum

यक्षेत्र'य'याव्य'सेर्।

tenpa gelme

याशुदःरयःयाद्रस्यःयरःकर।

sung-rab dampar char

कुवादवींदर्भावदे स्वाहेता

gyel gong delak nye

क्रेबार्बेर्-क्रेब-संदि-वाध्यर-बाख्य-वर्षेरा

nyechu chenpoy yang sa le sung

5977

dulwa

ন্ত্রি'বা

shiwa

क्रेम:ब्रेग

nyer shiwa

> ऑन: हन: सूग्राधा yunten hlakpa

> > บรัฐานงฟุ tsunche

त्युदः चौत्रः सूच lung gi chuk

रे हेर राष्ट्र हेर्ग्या पा denyi rabtu tokpa

> মু'মামম'মুর্। ma-keden

पञ्चः पदः पद्याः केद्। tseway daknyi

> র্মু'অ'শ্রু<মা kyowa pang

Class Nine

न्तरक्षाक्षा प्रमाण क्ष्य la jukpa

ลับารบัส คิ บาลุโ

aziga:ajaja:u:aj dushe sumpawa

ក្នុក ភ្លិក និងស ភ្លិ មេតុ ហ័តុ jangchub kyi sem kyi penyun

> श्रेता'य'य'वयारा'य। श्रेता'य'यवयारा'य।

jangchub kyi sem sungwa

বনা ঐব্ বস্থুর খা bakyu tenpa

नेश'पदित'पशुर'प। sheshin sungwa

รupa tenpa

> पर्रेद्र'त्ज्ञुश'पश्रद'य। tsundru tenpa

> রমার বিষয় বিশ্বর বিষয় বি

विषाः रचः ग्रीः वीद्रा sherab kyi leu

ngoway leu

प्रशादन्य स्थादन्ति त्यासी स्थापन्य।

रुट: बद:विशःगुट वर्देर वोद द्वापनिद से नेदा chungse she kyang dorlen tsulshin mi je

न्य प्रमाणिक प्रमाणिक के प्रमाणिक प्रम

श्रुर पर्श्रेप chir ngowa

ลรานฉิงกลังกา

पर्गोशः भ्रेंस्राश्चियाः पदिः पर्शेः प्रा trekom selway ngowa

รัร:รภู:ฉรูะ:ฉฉิ:ฉฐั:ฉๅ dugu jungway ngowa

Class Ten

प्रयाक्षिः प्रमुखः सुः प्रेर्।

अ८४:मु४:२प्रथ:शुरुष्

sanggye se su gyur

तर्में प्रते प्रके प्रम्या प्रहें सम्मा

> รุฐณราจะสมมาม ulwa jompa

> > त्र प्रहेसशःय। ne jompa

ह्येर-श्रेत्-प्रते-स्या-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा-पर्श्वा

प्रिन् :पर :दत्र : दर्जेदे : श्रुज :पश्य :पर्टेशशः प।
kyepar ngendroy dukngel jompa

ลิมมาสูรามาดิาตราธิรานฉิามิมมาธูรา semgyu ma-shiwar jepay semjung

> Ϥως αξς:ΦηΝι duchak

> > Kongtro

て: ga-gyel

Sherab

segu jin mijinpay kyepar

गुःनःस्वरः केंग्राबरः केन्त्युबरः बीः नार्वेन्। jawa tren tsek che lu minu

u jin tong du dang gupa



Please cut along the dotted line to make an insert for the binder spine

GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM: PART 2

THIS COURSE USES A 2 INCH BINDER

17



THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 2

COURSE

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 6-10

